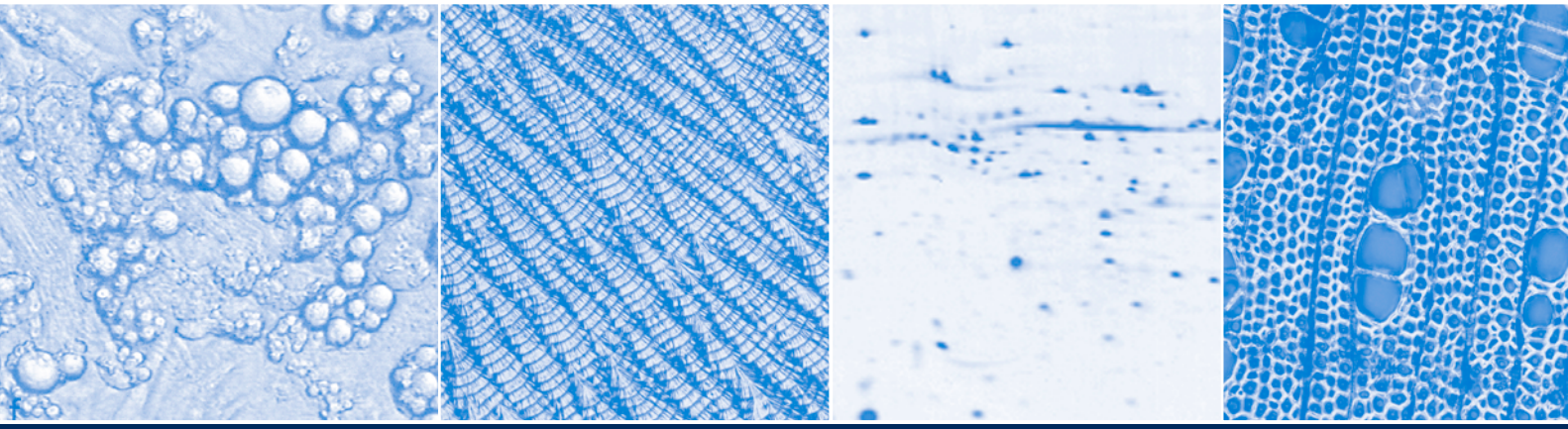
British Journal of Nutrition

BJN An International Journal of Nutritional Science

Volume 104 Supplement 2 August 2010



Supplement

Prebiotic effects: metabolic and health benefits

M. Roberfroid, G. R. Gibson, L. Hoyles, A. L. McCartney, R. Rastall, I. Rowland, D. Wolvers, B. Watzl, H. Szajewska, B. Stahl, F. Guarner, F. Respondek, K. Whelan, V. Coxam, M.-J. Davicco, L. Léotoing, Y. Wittrant, N. M. Delzenne, P. D. Cani, A. M. Neyrinck and A. Meheust

Published on behalf of The Nutrition Society by Cambridge University Press

ISSN 0007-1145

British Journal of Nutrition

An International Journal of Nutritional Science

Volume 104, 2010 ISSN: 0007-1145

Aims and Scope

The *British Journal of Nutrition* is an international, peer-reviewed journal publishing original papers, review articles, short communications and technical notes on human and clinical nutrition, animal nutrition and basic science as applied to nutrition. Correspondence is encouraged in a Nutrition Discussion Forum. The Journal recognizes the multidisciplinary nature of nutritional science and encourages the submission of material from all of the specialities involved in research and clinical practice. The Journal also publishes supplements on topics of particular interest.

The *British Journal of Nutrition* is published twice monthly by Cambridge University Press on behalf of The Nutrition Society.

The *British Journal of Nutrition* is available online to subscribers at journals.cambridge.org/bjn

Tables of contents and abstracts are available free at the same website.

The Nutrition Society has as its objective the advancement of the scientific study of nutrition and its applications to the maintenance of human and animal health.

Application of membership is invited from anyone whose work has contributed to the scientific knowledge of nutrition, whether such work has been in the laboratory, the field or the clinic, and whether experimental, clinical, agricultural or statistical in nature. There is also a student membership scheme with reduced subscriptions.

Particulars of The Nutrition Society and application forms for membership are available from The Nutrition Society, 10 Cambridge Court, 210 Shepherds Bush Road, London W6 7NJ, UK. Tel: +44 (0)20 7602 0228, Fax: +44 (0)20 7602 1756, Email: office@nutsoc.org.uk

The Nutrition Society Home Page is at http://www.nutritionsociety.org

Prebiotic effects: metabolic and health benefits

Marcel Roberfroid[1], Glenn R. Gibson[2], Lesley Hoyles[2], Anne L. McCartney[2], Robert Rastall[2], Ian Rowland[2], Danielle Wolvers[3], Bernhard Watzl[4], Hania Szajewska[5], Bernd Stahl[6], Francisco Guarner[7], Frederique Respondek[8], Kevin Whelan[9], Veronique Coxam[10], Marie-Jeanne Davicco[10], Laurent Léotoing[10], Yohann Wittrant[10], Nathalie M. Delzenne[11], Patrice D. Cani[11], Audrey M. Neyrinck[11] and Agnes Meheust[12]*

1. Université Catholique de Louvain, Brussels, Belgium
2. Department of Food and Nutritional Sciences, School of Chemistry, Food Biosciences and Pharmacy, The University of Reading, PO Box 226, Whiteknights, Reading RG6 6AP, UK
3. Unilever Food and Health Research Institute, Vlaardingen, The Netherlands
4. Department of Physiology and Biochemistry of Nutrition, Max Rubner-Institute, Karlsruhe, Germany
5. Department of Paediatrics, The Medical University of Warsaw, Warsaw, Poland
6. Danone Research – Centre for Specialised Nutrition, Friedrichsdorf, Germany
7. Digestive System Research Unit, Hospital General Vall d'Hebron, Barcelona, Spain
8. Syral, Marckolsheim, France
9. Nutritional Sciences Division, King's College London, London SE1 9NH, UK
10. INRA, UMR 1019 Nutrition Humaine, F-63122 Saint-Genès Champanelle, France
11. Metabolism and Nutrition Research Group - Louvain Drug Research Institute, Université Catholique de Louvain, Brussels, Belgium
12. ILSI Europe a.i.s.b.l., Avenue E. Mounier 83, Box 6, 1200 Brussels, Belgium

*Corresponding author: Agnes Meheust, ILSI Europe

Editor Prof. Dr. med. habil. Günther Boehm, Erasmus University, Rotterdam, The Netherlands

Commissioned by the
ILSI Europe Prebiotics Task Force

Correspondence: ILSI Europe a.i.s.b.l. - Avenue E. Mounier 83, Box 6 - B-1200 Brussels - Belgium
Email: publications@ilsieurope.be - Fax: +32 2 762 00 44

Vol. 104 Supplement No. S2 August 2010 **British Journal of Nutrition**

Table of Contents

Keywords: Prebiotic, Gut microbiota, Infant nutrition, Immune functions, Irritable bowel syndrome, Inflammatory bowel disease, Metabolic syndrome, Mineral absorption, Metabolic endotoxemia, Osteoporosis, Colonization resistance.

Correspondence: ILSI Europe a.i.s.b.l., Avenue E. Mounier 83, Box 6 - 1200 Brussels, Belgium, fax: +32 2 762 00 44, email: publications@ilsieurope.be

Abbreviations: ACF, aberrant crypt foci; BMD, bone mineral density; CD, Crohn's disease; CFU, colony forming unit; DGGE, denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis; DMH, dimethylhydrazine; DP, degree of polymerisation; FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; GALT, gut-associated lymphoid tissue; GI, gastro-intestinal; GLP, glucagon-like peptide; GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; IBS, irritable bowel syndrome; IBD, inflammatory bowel disease; ITF, inulin-type fructans; LPS, lipopolysaccharides; NK, natural killer; OTU, operational taxonomic units; PYY, peptide YY; RCT, randomized controlled trials; TER, *trans*-epithelial resistance; TLR, toll-like receptor; UC, ulcerative colitis

The different compartments of the gastrointestinal tract are inhabited by populations of micro-organisms. By far the most important predominant populations are in the colon where a true symbiosis with the host exists that is a key for well-being and health. For such a microbiota, 'normobiosis' characterises a composition of the gut 'ecosystem' in which micro-organisms with potential health benefits predominate in number over potentially harmful ones, in contrast to 'dysbiosis', in which one or a few potentially harmful micro-organisms are dominant, thus creating a disease-prone situation. The present document has been written by a group of both academic and industry experts (in the ILSI Europe Prebiotic Expert Group and Prebiotic Task Force, respectively). It does not aim to propose a new definition of a prebiotic nor to identify which food products are classified as prebiotic but rather to validate and expand the original idea of the prebiotic concept (that can be translated in 'prebiotic effects'), defined as: 'The selective stimulation of growth and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of microbial genus(era)/species in the gut microbiota that confer(s) health benefits to the host.' Thanks to the methodological and fundamental research of microbiologists, immense progress has very recently been made in our understanding of the gut microbiota. A large number of human intervention studies have been performed that have demonstrated that dietary consumption of certain food products can result in statistically significant changes in the composition of the gut microbiota in line with the prebiotic concept. Thus the prebiotic effect is now a well-established scientific fact. The more data are accumulating, the more it will be recognised that such changes in the microbiota's composition, especially increase in bifidobacteria, can be regarded as a marker of intestinal health. The review is divided in chapters that cover the major areas of nutrition research where a prebiotic effect has tentatively been investigated for potential health benefits. The prebiotic effect has been shown to associate with modulation of biomarkers and activity(ies) of the immune system. Confirming the studies in adults, it has been demonstrated that, in infant nutrition, the prebiotic effect includes a significant change of gut microbiota composition, especially an increase of faecal concentrations of bifidobacteria. This concomitantly improves stool quality (pH, SCFA, frequency and consistency), reduces the risk of gastroenteritis and infections, improves general well-being and reduces the incidence of allergic symptoms such as atopic eczema. Changes in the gut microbiota composition are classically considered as one of the many factors involved in the pathogenesis of either inflammatory bowel disease or irritable bowel syndrome. The use of particular food products with a prebiotic effect has thus been tested in clinical trials with the objective to improve the clinical activity and well-being of patients with such disorders. Promising beneficial effects have been demonstrated in some preliminary studies, including changes in gut microbiota composition (especially increase in bifidobacteria concentration). Often associated with toxic load and/or miscellaneous risk factors, colon cancer is another pathology for which a possible role of gut microbiota composition has been hypothesised. Numerous experimental studies have reported reduction in incidence of tumours and cancers after feeding specific food products with a prebiotic effect. Some of these studies (including one human trial) have also reported that, in such conditions, gut microbiota composition was modified (especially due to increased concentration of bifidobacteria). Dietary intake of particular food products with a prebiotic effect has been shown, especially in adolescents, but also tentatively in postmenopausal women, to increase Ca absorption as well as bone Ca accretion and bone mineral density. Recent data, both from experimental models and from human studies, support the beneficial effects of particular food products with prebiotic properties on energy homaeostasis, satiety regulation and body weight gain. Together, with data in obese animals and patients, these studies support the hypothesis that gut microbiota composition (especially the number of bifidobacteria) may contribute to modulate metabolic processes associated with syndrome X, especially obesity and diabetes type 2. It is plausible, even though not exclusive, that these effects are linked to the microbiota-induced changes and it is feasible to conclude that their mechanisms fit into the prebiotic effect. However, the role of such changes in these health benefits remains to be definitively proven. As a result of the research activity that followed the publication of the prebiotic concept 15 years ago, it has become clear that products that cause a selective modification in the gut microbiota's composition and/or activity(ies) and thus strengthens normobiosis could either induce beneficial physiological effects in the colon and also in extra-intestinal compartments or contribute towards reducing the risk of dysbiosis and associated intestinal and systemic pathologies.

The main author of this section is Professor Roberfroid. In the 1980s, Japanese researchers[1,2] had already demonstrated that specific non-digestible oligosaccharides (especially fructo-oligosaccharides) were selectively fermented by bifidobacteria and had the capacity, upon feeding, in stimulating their growth in human faeces. These observations were confirmed and further expanded by Gibson & Roberfroid[3] who introduced the concept of prebiotics and have recently published a review of the research which includes the most recent development[4] (Table 1). During the last 15 years, this concept has attracted the interest of many academic as well as industrial scientists and it has become a popular research topic in nutrition and, more recently, in the biomedical fields.

Early research in the mid-1990s on prebiotics has contributed towards the development and validation of new molecular biology-based methods resulting in easy-to-handle, sensitive, and highly specific methods to identify and quantify the large variety of micro-organisms composing the gut microbiota[5–16]. The application of such methods has improved our knowledge of the gut microbiota composition in terms of variety, classification, identity and relative concentrations of genera or species of micro-organisms, as well as in terms of their properties and interactions/co-operations with each other and with intestinal epithelial cells. This has led the International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics (ISAPP) (6th meeting in Ontario, Canada, November 2008) to propose the concept of 'normobiosis' to characterise a normal gut microbiota in which genera/species of micro-organisms with potential health benefits predominate in number over potentially harmful ones as opposed to 'dysbiosis' which characterises a gut microbiota in which one or a few

British Journal of Nutrition

Table 1. Developing definitions of the prebiotic concept

'A non-digestible food ingredient that beneficially affects the host by selectively stimulating the growth and/or activity of one or a limited number of bacteria in the colon, and thus improves host health'
Gibson GR & Roberfroid MB (1995) Dietary modulation of the human colonic microbiota: introducing the concept of prebiotics. *J Nutr* **125**, 1401–1412.
'A selectively fermented ingredient that allows specific changes, both in the composition and/or activity in the gastrointestinal microflora that confers benefits upon host well being and health.'
Gibson GR, Probert HM, Van Loo JAE, *et al.* (2004) Dietary modulation of the human colonic microbiota: updating the concept of prebiotics. *Nutr Res Rev* **17**, 259–275.
'A dietary prebiotic is a selectively fermented ingredient that results in specific changes, in the composition and/or activity of the gastrointestinal microbiota, thus conferring benefit(s) upon host health.'
ISAPP (2008) 6th Meeting of the International Scientific Association of Probiotics and Prebiotics, London, Ontario.

potentially harmful genus(era)/species of micro-organisms are dominant, thus creating a disease-prone situation.

A large part of the research activity has concentrated and still does focus on the *in vitro* and *in vivo* abilities of selective modification in the composition of the complex gut microbiota, in particular research has focused on the selective stimulation of growth of mainly bifidobacteria, but also lactobacilli. In the future, it is likely that this may be expanded towards other genera, e.g. *Eubacterium, Faecalibacterium* and *Roseburia*. It has become clear that products, causing such a selective modification in gut microbiota's composition and/or activity(ies), could, in addition, either induce beneficial physiological effects not only in the colon but also within the whole body and/or contribute towards reducing the risk of miscellaneous intestinal and systemic pathologies. These effects are summarised in Table 2 and have been discussed, on a regular basis, at international conferences[17–19] and were, more recently, reviewed in a handbook[20]. They are also topics for the present document.

Table 2. Summary of the main physiological and patho-physiological targets for prebiotic effects, i.e effects associated with a selective stimulation of growth and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of gut microorganisms

Improvement and/or stabilization of gut microbiota composition
Improvement of intestinal functions (stool bulking, stool regularity, stool consistency)
Increase in mineral absorption and improvement of bone health (bone Ca content, bone mineral density)
Modulation of gastro-intestinal peptides production, energy metabolism and satiety
Initiation (after birth) and regulation/modulation of immune functions
Improvement of intestinal barrier functions, reduction of metabolic endotoxemia
Reduction of risk of intestinal infections
and tentatively
Reduction of risk of obesity, type 2 diabetes, metabolic syndrome, etc.
Reduction of risk and/or improvement in the management of intestinal inflammation
Reduction of risk of colon cancer

The intensive research of the past 15 years has contributed towards an improved understanding of the complexity of the gut microbiota. This includes the discovery of new phyla/genera, their relative concentration in the gut microbiota, the key role of diet in modulating its composition, the changes associated with ageing or chronic diseases and the individual character of gut microbiota composition. In addition, past research has given us insights into its roles in human physiology and miscellaneous pathophysiological conditions. The gut microbiota is thus now perceived as a key player in health and well-being with, as a principal condition, a composition in which potentially health-promoting dominant micro-organisms (especially the saccharolytic genera/species, e.g. bifidobacteria) are elevated and/or more active than the potentially harmful ones (especially the proteolytic/putrefactive genera/species)[3,21], a situation known as 'normobiotic' or 'eubiotic'. It is now well recognised that, within such a potentially health beneficial dominant microbiota, the genus *Bifidobacterium* plays an important role although future research may show different genera/species to also be important. Indeed, it has been hypothesised that increasing bifidobacteria in gut microbiota might improve health status and reduce disease risk.

As a result of discussions with both academic and industry experts (in the ILSI Europe Prebiotic Expert Group and Prebiotic Task force, respectively), the present document does not aim at proposing a new definition of a prebiotic nor at identifying which food components/ingredients/supplements classify as prebiotic but rather to validate and expand the original idea of the prebiotic concept, as

> The selective stimulation of growth and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of microbial genus(era)/species in the gut microbiota that confer(s) health benefits to the host,

with 'selectivity' being the key condition that needs to be demonstrated, *in vivo,* in the complex human (animal) gut microbiota by applying the most relevant and validated methodology(ies) to quantify a wide variety of genera/species composing the gut microbiota;

'activity(ies)' meaning a metabolic profile(s), molecular signalling, prokaryote–eucaryote cell–cell interaction linked to one specific microbial genus/species or resulting from the coordinated activity of a limited number of microbial genus(era);

'confer(s)' referring to one or a limited number of selectively stimulated genus(era)/species in the gut microbiota.

In this concept, the use of 'gut microbiota' is limited to the application to food/feed components.

Moreover, it is implicit that 'health benefit(s)' must be linked/correlated, directly or indirectly, with the presence in relatively high concentrations and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of selectively stimulated micro-organisms in the gut microbiota. Indeed, such a conceptual approach emphasises the link between 'selective stimulation of growth and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of specific bacteria genus/species' and 'health benefit(s)'. Consequently, only food components/ingredients/supplements for which both such a selective stimulation has been scientifically substantiated and health benefits have been evaluated are included

British Journal of Nutrition

in the review process. The expression 'prebiotic effect(s)' will be used to identify or refer to selective changes in gut microbiota composition as well as specific (patho-) physiological effects both in experimental and in human intervention studies. However, it must be kept in mind that to substantiate a 'prebiotic' effect will require the demonstration that such an effect is likely to be 'causally' linked to or at least correlated with selective change(s) in gut microbiota composition.

Currently and mostly for historical reasons, the majority of the scientific data (both experimental and human) on prebiotic effects have been obtained using food ingredients/supplements belonging to two chemical groups namely inulin-type fructans (ITF) and the galacto-oligosaccharides (GOS) (for more details on the chemistry, nomenclature and abbreviations used in the present review see Table 3). These have repeatedly demonstrated the capacity to selectively stimulate the growth of bifidobacteria and, in some cases, lactobacilli leading to a significant change in gut microbiota composition. Concurrently, most of the health benefits possibly associated with the prebiotic effects were discovered and demonstrated using the same food ingredients/supplements. This, by no means, precludes other products of demonstrating such prebiotic effects with the same or other health benefits. However, since the aim of the present review is, primarily, to expand and validate the prebiotic concept, it will neither emphasise nor identify which specific products can be classified as 'prebiotic'. A precise list of potential candidates for such a classification would require a detailed review of all published studies using each potential candidate as well as the evaluation of their validity and their relevance. This was not the mandate given to the group of experts who collectively wrote the manuscript. For such a discussion, the reader should consult the different chapters in the recently published *Handbook of Prebiotics* [20]. It is important to emphasise the fact that the prebiotic effect and the dietary fibre effect have two different attributes. Being resistant (partly or totally) to digestion and being fermented (at least the so-called soluble dietary fibres) both may concern gut microbiota composition and activity. What makes them different is the selectivity of the prebiotic effect as described earlier.

In the concluding chapter, tentative answers to the above questions will be presented and discussed with the main objective to prospectively prioritise topics for further research in the field.

Prebiotic effects in the gut

Microbiota of the gastro-intestinal tract

The main authors of this section are Professor Gibson, Dr Hoyles and Dr McCartney and specifically Professor Rastall for the *in vitro* subsection.

The microbiota of the human gastro-intestinal (GI) tract inhabits a complex ecosystem[22]. Factors such as pH, peristalsis, nutrient availability, oxidation–reduction potential within the tissue, age of host, host health, bacterial adhesion, bacterial co-operation, mucin secretions containing Igs, bacterial

Table 3. Description and usual nomenclature of the main products with established prebiotic effect

Generic name and structural characteristics (abbreviation used in text*)	Usual names and average DP (DP_{av})
INULIN-TYPE FRUCTANS	
Linear β(2 → 1) fructosyl-fructose $G_{py}F_n$ and/or $F_{py}F_n$ ITF	**Inulin**
Short to large size polymers (DP 2-60) $ITF_{-DPav12}$	**Inulin** (especially chicory inulin) (DP_{av} 12)
Short Oligomers (DP 2-8) $ITF_{-DPav3-4}$	**Fructo-oligosaccharides (FOS)** FOS scFOS (enzymatic synthesis from sucrose) (DP_{av} 3·6) **Oligofructose** (enzymatic partial hydrolysis of inulin) (DP_{av} 4)
Large size polymers (DP 10-60) $ITF_{-DPav25}$	**High molecular weight inulin** (physical purification) (DP_{av} 25) lcFOS
Mixture (DP 2-8) + (DP 10-60) ITF_{-MIX}	**Mixture of oligomers and large size polymers**
GALACTANS	
Mixture of β(1 → 6); β(1 → 3); β(1 → 4) galactosyl-galactose GOS Gal_n-Gal and/or Gal_n-Glc (DP 2-8)	**Galacto-oligosaccharides, *trans*-galacto-oligosaccharides** (enzymatic transgalactosylsation of lactose)
MIXTURE of GALACTANS and INULIN-TYPE FRUCTANS	**Galacto-oligosaccharides and high molecular weight inulin**
GOS–FOS	**Usually known as GOS–FOS or scGOS–lcFOS**

DP, degree of polymerisation; ITF, inulin-type fructans; lcFOS, long-chain fructo-oligosaccharides; GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; Gal, galactose; Glc, glucose; scGOS, short-chain galacto-oligosaccharides.

*The abbreviations mentioned in this table will be used throughout the documents to identify the different compounds used in the studies.

antagonism and transit time influence the numbers and diversity of bacteria present in the different regions of the GI tract[23]. Until 20 years ago, our knowledge of the GI microbiota relied upon cultivation-based methods and recovery of bacteria from faecal samples. However, with the advent of molecular techniques and their application to biopsy and faecal samples, our knowledge of the GI microbiota has increased dramatically[5–16]. An understanding of the bacteria making up the GI microbiota is important due to its involvement in the development of the GI mucosal immune system, maintenance of a normal physiological environment and for providing essential nutrients[24].

The stomach. Although the bacterial load in the stomach is low in healthy adults (approximately 10^2 colony forming unit (CFU) (per ml contents)[25]), the walls of the stomach are colonised with bacteria. In the healthy adult stomach, the predominant organisms isolated include lactobacilli, enterococci, 'catenabacteria' and bacilli[26]. Of the bacteria that inhabit the stomach, *Helicobacter* species have been studied most intensively due to their association with various gastric complaints. *Helicobacter pylori* is present in the stomach of a subset of the population (10 % of those between 18 and 30 years of age; 50 % of those age 60 and over), where it resides in the mucous layer next to the gastric epithelium[23]. Colonisation with *Helicobacter pylori* can be asymptomatic, but the organism is known to cause symptoms such as acute gastritis (i.e. pain, bloating, nausea and vomiting) and/or chronic gastritis; it has also been associated with peptic ulcers and gastric carcinomas[23].

The small intestine (duodenum, jejunum and ileum). The environment of the duodenum is acidic (pH 4–5) with lactobacilli and streptococci predominating, and numbers of bacteria are higher than those found in the stomach (10^2–10^4 CFU (per ml contents);[27]).

Cultivation studies have shown that lactobacilli, streptococci, veillonellae, staphylococci, actinobacilli and yeasts to be the most prominent in the duodenum and jejunum[23]. However, due to limitations in cultivation techniques and the ethical issues surrounding the obtention of biopsy samples from human subjects, our knowledge of the microbiota of the small intestine was poor until recently. Table 4 gives details of the results of recent molecular studies that have provided additional understanding of the microbiota of the small intestine. But these studies are only informative, because only one or a few donors have been used in each study, and their ages have not been representative of the general population. However, the results of the molecular studies appear to confirm those of cultivation-based work.

The microbiota changes markedly from the duodenum to the ileum, as the velocity of the intraluminal content decreases, pH increases and oxidation–reduction potentials lower, with bacterial loads increasing to 10^6–10^8 CFU (per ml contents)[23]. As transit time in the small intestine is rather rapid (2–4 h) and the bacterial density relatively low, its impact in terms of overall fermentation is low compared with the large intestine (see later). The small intestine is also the site of many bacterial infections, such as salmonella and some *Escherichia coli*. For this reason, the small intestine is also a target for probiotics known to compete with pathogens. Similarly, sialylated acidic oligosaccharides from human milk can block the adhesion of pathogens on the epithelial surface.

The large intestine. The combination of increased transit time of the large intestine, increased nutrient availability (i.e. undigested food material from the upper GI tract, sloughed-off bacterial cells, microbial cell debris and by-products of microbial metabolism) and a more neutral pH ensures that the large intestine is a highly favourable environment for microbial colonisation. As the environment is strictly anaerobic (> 100 mV), in particular obligate anaerobes prevail. Table 5 gives details of some bacteria that have been isolated from the GI microbiota. Table 6 gives details of molecular studies on biopsies from different regions of the large intestine. In addition to characterising the mucosa-associated microbiota, Zoetendal *et al.*[11] demonstrated that the faecal microbiota differs from that inhabiting the GI mucosa.

Even today, due to the difficulty of obtaining samples from the different regions of the intestine, much of the work done in relation to the ecology and activity of bacteria within the GI tract is carried out using faecal samples. However, the faecal microbiota is not representative of that of the GI tract as a whole[11,14], and inferences made from *in vitro* studies in relation to specific GI diseases, particularly those involving the more-proximal regions of the intestine, should always be made with this in mind. However, a study examining the GI microbiota of sudden-death victims has shown that the faecal microbiota reflects that of the luminal contents of the descending colon in terms of the culturable component[28]. Molecular-based methods have been used to examine the faecal microbiota in recent years. Identification of specific strains isolated from faecal samples has become more accurate due to the use of 16S ribosomal ribonucleic acid gene sequence analysis and has improved taxonomic schemes and our understanding of the bacteria involved in specific metabolic processes (e.g. the role of *Roseburia* spp. in butyrate production[29], and the identification of the mucin-degrading bacterium *Akkermansia muciniphila*[30]). This improved characterisation of viable bacteria has also aided in the design of probes for use in fluorescence *in situ* hybridisation analysis (e.g. Rrec584 for *Roseburia* spp.[31]).

Early cloning studies examined relatively small numbers of clones to generate a phylogenetic inventory of the faecal microbiota of healthy adults. Wilson & Blitchington[22] generated two clone libraries (one from a 9-cycle PCR (fifty clones, twenty-seven operational taxonomic units) and the other from a 35-cycle PCR (thirty-nine clones, thirteen operational taxonomic units)) from a faecal sample from a healthy 40-year-old male. Of the clones they analysed, 35 % were related to the *Bacteroides* group, 10 % to the *Clostridium coccoides* group (*Clostridium* cluster XIVa) and 50 % to the *Clostridium leptum* group (*Clostridium* cluster IV). Less than a quarter of the sequences analysed were derived from a known bacteria. Suau *et al.*[5] found that of the 284 clones they generated from a faecal sample from a 40-year-old male, the majority of the sequences fell into three phylogenetic groups: *Bacteroides* (31 %), *C. coccoides* (44 %) and *C. leptum* (20 %). The remaining clones were derived from *Streptococcus salivarius* and *Streptococcus parasanguinis* and bacteria related to *Mycoplasma* spp., clostridia, the *Atopobium* group, *Verrucomicrobium spinosum* and the *Phascolarctobacterium faecium* subgroup. Seventy-six per cent of the clones analysed were derived from previously unknown bacteria. Blaut *et al.*[32]

Table 4. Microbial diversity of the mucosa of the human small intestine as determined by 16S ribosomal ribonucleic acid gene sequence analysis

Subject	Biopsy	No. of clones examined	No. of operational taxonomic units identified	Phylum: species identified*	Reference
35-year-old healthy female	Distal ileum	Unknown	Unknown	*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides vulgatus*, uncultured *Bacteroides* sp. adhufec51 and *Parabacteroides* spp. *Firmicutes*: *Clostridium* cluster XIVa (uncultured bacteria mpn group 24 and 66·25) and *Streptococcus salivarius*	Wang *et al.*[12]
54-year-old healthy female	Jejunum	88	22	*Actinobacteria*: *Micrococcus mucilaginosus* (1 %) *Bacteroidetes*: *Prevotella* sp. oral clone and *P. melaninogenica* (3 %) *Firmicutes*: *Streptococcus mitis*, *S. salivarius*, *S. oralis*, *S. parasanguis* and *S. anginosus* (68 %); *Clostridium* clusters XI (*Mogibacterium neglectum* and *Peptostreptococcus anaerobius*) and IX (*Veillonella atypica* and *V. parvula*) (3 and 7 %, respectively) *Fusobacteria*: *Fusobacterium* sp. BS011 (3 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Haemophilus parainfluenzae*, *Pseudomonas putida*, *Acinetobacter johnsonii*, *A. lwoffii* and *A. haemolyticus* and *Neisseria subflav*a (13 %) Others (2 %)	Wang *et al.*[13]
	Distal ileum	85	33	*Bacteroidetes*: *B. vulgatus*, *Bacteroides* spp., *B. thetaiotaomicron*, *B. ovatus*, *B. uniformis* and *Alistipes putredinis* (49 %) *Firmicutes*: *Streptococcus mitis* and *S. oralis* (2 %); *Clostridium* clusters XIVb (*Clostridium lactatifermentans*), IX (*Dialister invisus*), IV (*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Oscillospira guilliermondii* and *Clostridium orbiscindens*) and XIVa (*Clostridium* spp., *Clostridium symbiosum*, *Coprococcus catus*, *Dorea formicigenerans*, *Ruminococcus gnavus*, *R. obeum*, *Ruminococcus* spp. and *Roseburia intestinalis*) (5, 5, 7 and 20 %, respectively) *Fusobacteria*: *Fusobacterium varium* (1 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Sutterella wadsworthensis* (1 %) *Verrucomicrobia*: *Verrucomicrobium* spp. (5 %) Others (5 %)	
74-year-old male at autopsy	Jejunum	92	9	*Firmicutes*: *Veillonella parvula* (4 %), *Lactobacillus reuteri* (1 %), *L. lactis* (11 %), *L. mali* (73 %), *Streptococcus salivarius* (4 %) and *S. pneumoniae* (1 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* (5 %)	Hayashi *et al.*[15]
	Ileum	89	17	*Firmicutes*: *Veillonella parvula* (15 %), *Clostridium lituseburense* (1 %), *Abiotrophia* sp. (1 %), *Lactobacillus reuteri* (1 %), *L. mali* (20 %), *L. lactis* (14 %), *Streptococcus salivarius* (9 %), *S. constellatus* (1 %) and *S. pneumoniae* (9 %) *Fusobacteria*: *Leptotrichia buccalis* (1 %) and *Fusobacteria* spp. (1 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* (1 %) and *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* (22 %) Others (1 %)	
85-year-old female at autopsy	Jejunum	90	13	*Bacteroidetes*: *B fragilis* (1 %) *Fusobacteria*: *Phascolarctobacterium faecium* (1 %), *Eubacterium ventriosum* (1 %), *E. cylindroides* (1 %), *Clostridium purinolyticum* (3 %), *C. leptum* (1 %) and *Enterococcus* group (5 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Escherichia coli* (4 %) and *Klebsiella* subgroup (67 %) Others (2 %)	Hayashi *et al.*[15]
	Ileum	94	4	*Firmicutes*: *Enterococcus* group (13 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Klebsiella* subgroup (85 %)	
87-year-old female at autopsy	Jejunum	91	3	*Firmicutes*: *Enterococcus* group (7 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* (1 %) and *Klebsiella planticola* (92 %)	Hayashi *et al.*[15]
	Ileum	89	15	*Firmicutes*: *Rumincococcus gnavus* (2 %), *Peptostreptococcus anaerobius* (6 %), *P. micros* (2 %), *Enterococcus* group (33 %), *Streptococcus salivarius* (8 %) and *Clostridium leptum* (3 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* (1 %), *Escherichia* subgroup (16 %), *Klebsiella* subgroup (2 %), *Klebsiella planticola* (21 %) and *Xenorhabdus* subgroup (5 %)	

No., number.
* Numbers in parentheses represent proportion of clones ascribed to a particular phylum/genus/cluster where known. Names of nearest phylogenetic relatives are given.

Table 5. Bacteria, their substrates and products in the human large intestine Taken from Salminen *et al.*[377]

Bacteria	Gram reaction	Mean concentration (log_{10} per (g dry weight faeces))	Mode of action on substrate(s)	Fermentation product(s)
Bacteroides	−	11·3	Saccharolytic	Ac, Pr, Su
Eubacteria	+	10·7	Saccharolytic, some aa-fermenting species	Ac, Bu, La
Bifidobacteria	+	10·2	Saccharolytic	Ac, La, f, e
Clostridia	+	9·8	Saccharolytic, some aa-fermenting species	Ac, Pr, Bu, La, e
Lactobacilli	+	9·6	Saccharolytic	La
Ruminococci	+	10·2	Saccharolytic	Ac
Peptostreptococci	+	10·1	Saccharolytic, some aa-fermenting species	Ac, La
Peptococci	+	10·0	aa-fermentation	Ac, Bu, La
Methanobrevibacter	+	8·8	Chemolithotrpohic	CH_4
Desulfovibrio	−	8·4	Various	Ac
Propionibacteria	+	9·4	Saccaharolytic, lactate fermentation	Ac, Pr
Actinomyces	+	9·2	Saccharolytic	Ac, Pr
Streptococci	+	8·9	Carbohydrate and aa-fermentation	La, Ac
Fusobacteria	−	8·4	aa-fermentation, assimilation of carbohydrates	Bu, Ac, La
Escherichia	−	8·6	Carbohydrate and aa-fermentation	Mixed acids

aa, amino acid; Ac, acetate; Pr, propionate; Su, succinate; Bu, butyrate; La, lactate; f, formate; e, ethanol.

used a cloning approach to demonstrate that microbial diversity in faeces increases with age. It was found that the number of operational taxonomic units corresponding to known molecular species was highest in infants and lowest in the elderly subjects, with 92 % of sequences from the elderly subjects corresponding to previously unknown bacteria.

As molecular methods have become more widely available and less time consuming and their relative costs have decreased, more ambitious cloning studies in which thousands of sequences have been examined have been carried out[14,33]. The results of these studies in terms of the groups of bacteria represented by the largest number of clones and the identification of previously unknown bacteria are in accordance with those of Wilson & Blitchington[22] and Suau *et al.*[5], but are notable for the characterisation of several actinobacterial and proteobacterial sequences from human faecal samples.

Techniques such as temperature gradient gel electrophoresis and denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis (DGGE) allow higher numbers of samples from more donors to be examined than traditional cloning studies. Temperature gradient gel electrophoresis was used by Zoetendal *et al.*[9] to examine the total bacterial communities of faecal samples from sixteen adults. Host-specific fingerprints were generated, demonstrating inter-individual variation in the composition of the faecal microbiota and confirming the results of cultivation studies. Some bands were seen in fingerprints from multiple donors, suggesting that species of the predominant microbiota were common across individuals. In addition, by obtaining samples from two donors over a 6-month period, the authors showed that the profiles of these donors did not differ significantly over time, demonstrating that predominant microbial species were relatively stable without dietary intervention. Excision and sequencing of bands of interest allowed the authors to perform a phylogenetic analysis on their samples, the results of which demonstrated that the majority of bacteria represented in their fingerprints did not correspond to known bacterial species. Of the prominent bands identified in almost all samples, most belonged to different *Clostridium* clusters, with the remainder identified as *Ruminococcus obeum*, *Eubacterium hallii* and *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*. Zoetendal *et al.*[10], using DGGE, demonstrated that host genotype affects the composition of the faecal microbiota. In that study, the authors examined faecal samples from fifty donors of varying relatedness. A higher similarity was seen between fingerprints from monozygotic twins living apart than between those of married couples or pairs of twins. There was a significant difference between the fingerprints of unrelated people grouped by either gender or living arrangements, and no relationship between the fingerprints generated and the age difference of siblings. Temporal temperature gradient gel electrophoresis and DGGE studies examining the faecal microbiota of children and infants have confirmed the impact of host genotype on the composition of the faecal microbiota[34]. Other studies employing DGGE have used primer sets that allow examination of the composition and dynamics of specific groups of bacteria (Table 7). The detection limit seems to be the main barrier to overcome in these studies, particularly when examining populations such as bifidobacteria and lactobacilli – the commonest prebiotic targets.

With respect to the prebiotic concept, it is important to understand that apart from knowledge on the complexity of the gut microflora, it is also known that certain bacteria are associated with toxin formation and even pathogenicity when they become dominant. Others are associated with carcinogen generation and the metabolism of other xenobiotics. These potentially harmful bacteria belong to species within groups such as clostridia and bacteroides. Whereas knowledge on overt or latent pathogens has advanced markedly, due to the symptoms they can cause, there is less consensus on what characterises potentially harmful bacteria (without direct pathogenicity) and potentially healthy bacteria. Still potentially healthy bacterial groups are characterised by a beneficial metabolism to the host through their SCFA formation, absence of toxin production, formation of defensins or even vitamin synthesis. They may also inhibit pathogens through a multiplicity of mechanisms. Their cell wall is devoid of lipopolysaccharides or other inflammatory mediators (i.e. mainly Gram positive). Some may also compete with receptor sites on the gut wall and inhibit pathogen persistence and thus reduce the potential risk of infection. They may also compete effectively for nutrients with pathogens. One subject of

Table 6. Microbial diversity of the mucosa of the human large intestine as determined by 16S ribosomal ribonucleic acid gene sequence analysis

Subject	Biopsy	No. of clones examined	No. of operational taxonomic units identified	Phylum: species identified*	Reference
35-year-old healthy female	Ascending colon	27		*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides vulgatus*, *Bacteroides* spp. *Firmicutes*: *Clostridium* cluster XIVa (uncultured bacteria mpn group 24 and 66·25, *Ruminococcus gnavus*)	Wang *et al.*[12]
	Descending colon	27		*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides vulgatus*, uncultured *Bacteroides* sp. adhufec51 and *Parabacteroides* spp. *Firmicutes*: *Clostridium* cluster XIVa (uncultured bacteria mpn group 24 and 66·25)	
68-year-old female with mild sigmoid diverticulosis	Descending colon	190		*Bacteroidetes* (17·3 %): *Bacteroides vulgatus*, uncultured *Bacteroides* sp. HUCC30 and *Parabacteroides* spp. *Firmicutes* (1 %): *Streptococcus pneumoniae* *Proteobacteria* (39·6 %): *Shigella flexneri*, *S. sonnei*, *Stenotrophomonas maltophila*, *Leptothrix cholodnii*, *Herbaspirillum lemoignei*, *Methylobacterium* sp., *Sphingomonas* sp. and *Haemophilus influenzae* *Firmicutes*: *Bacillus–Lactobacillus–Streptococcus* (1·3 %); *Clostridium* cluster I (*Clostridium perfringens*), IV (*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Ruminococcus* spp., *Anaerofilum* spp. and uncultured bacterium CB25), IX (*Veillonella atypica*) and XIVa (uncultured bacteria mpn group 24 and AF54, *Lachnospira pectinoschiza* and *Clostridium xylanolyticum*) (1·3, 17·9, 1·8, and 15·3 %, respectively)	Wang *et al.* [12]
54-year-old, healthy female	Ascending colon	86	37	*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides vulgatus*, *Bacteroides* spp., *B. thetaiotaomicron*, *B. ovatus*, *B. uniformis* and *Alistipes putredinis* (27 %) *Firmicutes*: *Clostridium* clusters XIVb (*Clostridium lactatifermentans*), IX (*Dialister invisus* and *Propionispira arboris*), IV (*Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*, *Clostridium sporosphaeroides*, *C. orbiscindens* and *Oscillospira guilliermondii*) and XIVa (*Eubacterium halii*, *E. elegans*, *E. ramulus*, *Dorea formicigenerans*, *Ruminococcus lactaris*, *R. gnavus*, *Ruminococcus* sp., *Clostridium symbiosum*, *Clostridium* spp., *C. xylanolyticum* and *Roseburia intestinalis*) (6, 9, 13 and 33 %, respectively) *Fusobacteria*: *Fusobacterium varium* (1 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Escherichia coli*, *Acinetobacter johnsonii* and *Sutterella wadsworthensis*) (4 %) *Verrucomicrobia*: *Verrucomicrobium* spp. (5 %) Others (1 %)	Wang *et al.* [13]
	Rectum	88	32	*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides vulgatus*, *Bacteroides* spp., *B. thetaiotaomicron*, *B. uniformis* and *Alistipes putredinis* (44 %) *Firmicutes*: *Clostridium* clusters XI, XIVb, IX, IV and XIVa (*Clostridium* spp., *Eubacterium halii*, *Dorea formicigenerans*, *Ruminococcus lactaris*, *R. torques*, *Ruminococcus* spp. and *Roseburia intestinalis*) (1, 1, 5, 8 and 29 %, respectively) *Fusobacteria*: *Fusobacterium varium* (1 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Escherichia coli* (2 %) *Verrucomicrobia*: *Verrucomicrobium* spp. (9 %)	
74-year-old male at autopsy	Caecum	90	41	*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides fragilis* (3 %) and *Prevotella nigrescens* (1 %) *Firmicutes*: *Veillonella parvula* (2 %), *Clostridium xylanolyticum* (2 %), *C. polysaccharolyticum* (2 %), *C. leptum* (23 %), *C. lituseburense* (1 %), *C. glycolicum* (1 %), *Ruminococcus hansenii* (8 %), *R. gnavus* (4 %), *Butyrivibrio fibrisolvens* (22 %), *Eubacterium ventriosum* (1 %), *Lachnospira multipara* (4 %), *Lactobacillus reuteri* (1 %), *Streptococcus salivarius* (1 %), *S. pneumoniae* (3 %) and unclassified (14 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* (3 %)	Hayashi *et al.*[15]
	Recto-sigmoid colon	90	38	*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides fragilis* (4 %) and unclassified (1 %) *Firmicutes*: *Veillonella parvula* (1 %), *Phascolarctobacterium faecium* (3 %), *Ruminococcus hansenii* (9 %), *R. gnavus* (6 %), *Butyrivibrio fibrisolvens* (4 %), *Eubacterium ventriosum* (4 %), *Clostridium polysaccharolyticum* (2 %), *C. leptum* (30 %), unclassified (6 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Desulfovibrio desulfuricans* (2 %) and *Escherichia* subgroup (13 %) Other (2 %)	
85-year-old female at autopsy	Caecum	91	11	*Bacteroidetes*: *Bacteroides fragilis* (3 %) *Firmicutes*: *Ruminococcus gnavus* (2 %), *Clostridium lituseburense* (2 %), *Enterococcus* group (35 %) *Proteobacteria*: *Klebsiella* subgroup (36 %) *Actinobacteria*: *Bifidobacterium infantis* (2 %)	Hayashi *et al.*[15]

NS British Journal of Nutrition

Table 6. *Continued*

Subject	Biopsy	No. of clones examined	No. of operational taxonomic units identified	Phylum: species identified*	Reference
	Recto-sigmoid colon	90	27	*Firmicutes: Clostridium xylanolyticum* (1 %), *C. purinolyticum* (1 %), *C. ramosum* (1 %), *C. leptum* (11 %), *Eubacterium cylindroides* (1 %), *Ruminococcus hansenii* (2 %), *R. gnavus* (1 %), *Lactobacillus reuteri* (1 %), *Enterococcus* group (19 %), unclassified (7 %) *Proteobacteria: Desulfovibrio desulfuricans* (1 %), *Escherichia* subgroup (7 %), *Klebsiella* subgroup (22 %) *Actinobacteria: Bifidobacterium infantis* (2 %) Others (19 %)	
87-year-old female at autopsy	Caecum	92	22	*Bacteroidetes: Bacteroides fragilis* (2 %) *Firmicutes: Veillonella parvula* (1 %), *Clostridium leptum* (4 %), *Ruminococcus hansenii* (1 %), *R. gnavus* (3 %), unclassified (12 %), *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* (1 %), *L. mali* (8 %), *Enterococcus* group (1 %), *Streptococcus salivarius* (41 %), *S. pneumoniae* (16 %) *Proteobacteria: Escherichia* subgroup (7 %), *Klebsiella planticola* (1 %)	Hayashi *et al.*[15]
	Recto-sigmoid colon	92	26	*Bacteroidetes: Bacteroides fragilis* (2 %) *Firmicutes: Clostridium xylanolyticum* (2 %), *C. leptum* (1 %), *Ruminococcus hansenii* (2 %), *R. gnavus* (5 %), *Lactobacillus delbrueckii* (7 %), *L. reuteri* (27 %), *L. mali* (14 %), *Streptococcus salivarius* (11 %), *S. pneumoniae* (1 %) and unclassified (11 %) *Proteobacteria: Escherichia* subgroup (1 %) *Actinobacteria: Actinomyces–Bifidobacterium catenulatum* subgroup (9 %), *B. bifidum* (3 %), *B. infantis* (2 %)	

No., number.
* Numbers in parentheses represent proportion of clones ascribed to a particular phylum/genus/cluster where known. Names of nearest phylogenetic relatives are given.

intensive research is their stimulation of immunological defence systems, as discussed in section 'Prebiotic effects and immune system' of the present paper. Acknowledged examples are bifidobacteria and lactobacilli – known as useful probiotics. Intermediate genera like streptococci, enterococci, eubacteria and bacteroides can be classified as potentially beneficial to health or potentially harmful, depending on the species. With regard to some of the most recently identified genera in the major phylla (Firmicutes, Actinobacteria and Bacteroidetes), classification as potentially beneficial to health or potentially harmful still remains to be made. A scheme describing the hypothesis of a balanced microbiota has been proposed by Gibson and Roberfroid[3] and recently endorsed by ISAPP (2008) even though it is stillsubject of ongoing discussion. A revised version of that scheme including the most recent knowledge on gut microbiota composition is presented in Fig. 1.

The prebiotic concept is based on the selective stimulation of the host's own beneficial microflora by providing specific substrate for their growth and metabolism. Today, the effect is measured by using bifidobacteria or lactobacilli as markers, but may include others in the future, if their positive nature can be confirmed.

It has been shown by several studies (see section 'Human studies showing prebiotic effects in healthy persons' of the present paper) that dietary intervention can selectively modulate the indigenous composition of the gut microbiota. This is the basis of a prebiotic effect and this has been assessed through reliable molecular-based analyses.

Prebiotic effects and fermentation and physiology

Bacterial fermentation in the large gut. It is clear that a complex, resident gut microflora is present in human subjects. While the transit of residual foodstuffs through the stomach and small intestine is probably too rapid for the microbiota to exert a significant impact, this slows markedly in the colon. Colonic micro-organisms have ample opportunity to degrade available substrates[35,36]. These may be derived either from the diet or by endogenous secretions[37].

Due to the high residence time of colonic contents, as well as a diverse and profuse flora, the colonic microbiota plays a more important role in host health and well-being than is the case in the small intestine. Beneficial effects can be related to their metabolism (i.e. fermentation profiles and end products), capacity for producing vitamins, antioxidants (reduction equivalents), defensins against potentially harmful competitors, exchange of molecular signals between the different genera/species but also with the eukaryotic epithelial cells. Potentially beneficial bacteria are further characterised by the absence of secondary metabolic pathways leading to toxic metabolites of, for example xenobiotics or phytochemicals.

The prebiotic concept emphasises the specific stimulation of such a microbiota leading to a reduction of the metabolic activity of potentially harmful bacterial. This section focusses essentially on primary metabolism, whereas the following ones deal with adverse effects and their prevention.

Substrate utilisation in the large intestine. The colonic microflora derive substrates for growth from the human diet (e.g. non-digestible oligosaccharides, dietary fibre and

Table 7. Details of some TGGE and denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis studies of the faecal microbiota

Target population	Subject	Investigation	Overall results	Reference
All bacteria	Seven males, nine females	Interindividual variation; stability over 6 months monitored for two subjects	Differences in fingerprints among individuals demonstrated that each individual harboured a unique microbiota (interindividual variation); TGGE profiles were highly consistent over time for individuals, demonstrating intraindividual stability	Zoetendal *et al.*[9]
Lactic acid bacteria	Two males, two females	Development and validation of group-specific primers for human studies	Detection of *Lactobacillus* at $> 1 \times 10^5$ cfu per (g wet weight faeces); interindividual variation; intraindividual variation over 6 months	Walter *et al.*[382]
	Two adults on probiotic trial	Monitor changes in LAB population during *Lactobacillus* feeding	Amplicon for the probiotic strain only seen during feeding period; one donor had stable fingerprint over time, while the other showed variation	
Bifidobacteria	Three males, three females	Stability of bifidobacterial population over 4 weeks	Multiple bifidobacterial biotypes seen in five of six subjects; no amplicon could be generated for one of the subjects	Satokari *et al.*[383]
Lactobacilli, leuconostocs and pediococci	Twelve adults One baby boy	*Lactobacillus* population stability over time (0, 6 and 20 months for adults; 0–5 months for baby boy)	Interindividual variation and variable intraindividual stability in adults (stable in some individuals, but more dynamic in others); no amplicons prior to day fifty-five for baby, indicating that *Lactobacillus* were below the detection limit, but complexity of fingerprint increased after introduction of solid foods to the diet	Heilig *et al.*[384]
All bacteria	Fifty adults of varying relatedness plus four different primates	Impact of genetic relatedness on composition of the faecal microbiota	Positive linear relationship between host genetic relatedness and similarity of fingerprints; significantly higher similarity between unrelated humans when compared with other primates	Zoetendal *et al.*[11]
All bacteria	Thirteen pairs of identical twins, seven pairs of fraternal twins and twelve unrelated control pairs (4 months–10 years of age)	Examine faecal samples from related and unrelated children	Profiles for the unrelated group had the lowest similarity; highest levels of similarity seen between profiles from genetically identical twins; significant differences between profiles from fraternal and paternal twins, strongly suggesting a genetic influence over the composition of the faecal microbiota	Stewart *et al.*[34]
Clostridium leptum group (cluster IV)	Six adults (23–43 years of age) and five children (5·5–10 years of age) Seven faecal samples from a 10-year-old child over 3 years	Investigate the diversity of the *Clostridium leptum* subgroup in human faeces	Showed host-specific profiles for the adults, but at least four bands were seen in eight of eleven subjects Demonstrated structural succession of the over the first 2 years, with stabilization in the third year	Shen *et al.*[385]
All bacteria *Bacteroides fragilis* subgroup *Clostridium coccoides/ Eubacterium rectale* group (cluster XIVa) *Clostridium lituseburense* group (cluster XI)	Three groups of ten healthy humans	Effect of a prebiotic substrate and a probiotic organism and their synbiotic combination on the faecal microbiota over 120 d	All populations examined remained fairly stable over the course of the study, with interindividual variation observed; intraindividual stability, with minor changes attributed to diet; one band appeared or intensified in the universal profiles after ingestion of lactulose (attributed to *Bifidobacterium adolescentis*)	Vanhoutte *et al.*[386]

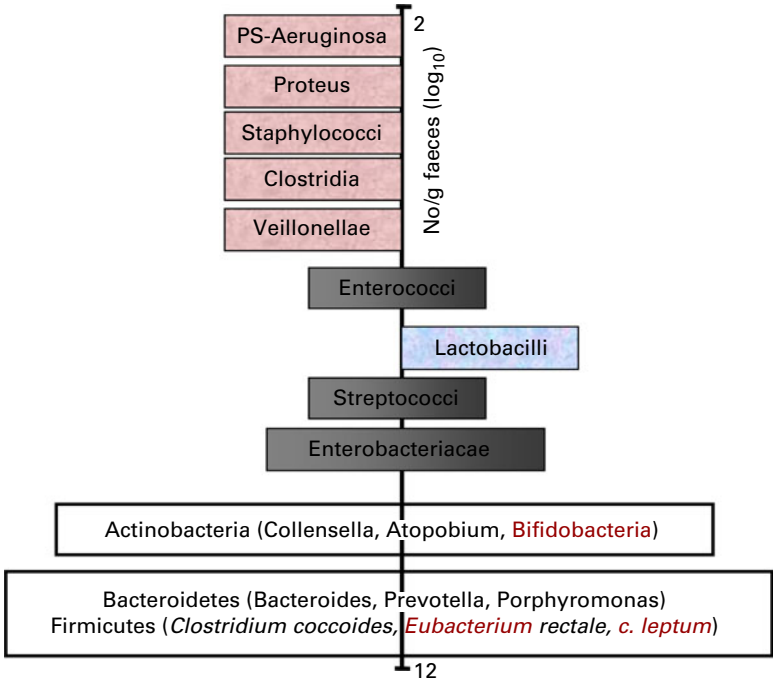


Fig. 1. Schematic representation of an adult gut microbiota. Major phylla and genera are located on a logarithmic scale as no. of CFU/g of faeces. Genera on the left site are likely to be potentially harmful whereas those on the right site are potentially beneficial to health. Those that sit both on the left site and the right site either contain species that are potentially harmful and species that are potentially beneficial to health or contain genera/species that still need to be classified. Indeed many of these have only recently been identified in the gut microbiota and their activity(ies) is/are still largely unknown.

un-digested proteins reaching the colon) as well as from endogenous sources such as mucins, the main glycoprotein constituents of the mucus which lines the walls of the GI tract[38]. The vast majority of the bacteria in the colon are strict anaerobes and thus derive energy from fermentation. The two main fermentative substrates of dietary origin are non-digestible carbohydrates (resistant starch, NSP, dietary fibres, non-digestible oligosaccharides of plant origin) and proteins which escape digestion in the small intestine[39,40]. Of these, carbohydrate fermentation is more energetically favourable, leading to a gradient of substrate utilisation spatially through the colon[41]. The proximal colon is a saccharolytic environment with the majority of carbohydrate entering the colon being fermented in this region. As digesta moves through to the distal colon, carbohydrate availability decreases, proteins and amino acids become increasingly important energy sources for bacteria[41].

The main substrates for bacterial growth are dietary non-digestible carbohydrates that evade upper intestinal hydrolysis and absorption. Non-digestible carbohydrates comprise resistant starch and resistant dextrins, NSP (e.g. pectins, arabinogalactans, gum Arabic, guar gum and hemicellulose), non-digestible oligosaccharides (e.g. raffinose, stachyose, ITF, galactans and mannans) as well as undigested portions of disaccharides (e.g. lactose) and sugar alcohols (e.g. lactitol and isomalt)[37,42,43]. Resistant starch, NSP, most dietary fibres but also some non-digestible oligosaccharides are fermented by a wide range of the colonic bacterial although the degree of their breaking down might vary[44]. However, some non-digestible oligosaccharides entering the colon are rapidly and quantitatively but selectively fermented (e.g. raffinose, ITF and galactans) by a small number of bacteria (e.g. bifidobacteria and lactobacilli)[45].

The overall intake of non-digestible carbohydrate in a Western diet is estimated between 20 and 30 g/d[46]. Endogenous carbohydrates, chiefly from mucins and chondroitin sulphate, contribute about 2–3 g/d of fermentable substrate[47]. The main saccharolytic species in the colonic microflora belong to the genera *Bacteroides, Bifidobacterium, Ruminococcus, Eubacterium, Lactobacillus* and *Clostridium*.

The second important group of substances for bacterial growth are proteins, peptides and amino acids: Approximately, 25 g of protein enters the colon daily[48]. Other sources of proteins in the colon include non-digestible food components, bacterial secretions, sloughed off epithelial cells, bacterial lysis products and mucins. The main proteolytic species belong to the genera *Bacteroides* and *Clostridium*.

Products of microbial fermentation in the colon and their effects on the host. Carbohydrates in the colon are fermented to SCFA, mainly, acetate, propionate and butyrate[49–51] and a number of other metabolites such as the electron sink products lactate, pyruvate, ethanol, succinate as well as the gases H_2, CO_2, CH_4 and H_2S[52]. As a whole, SCFA acidify the luminal pH which suppresses the growth of pathogens[53], they also influence intestinal motility[54]. They are rapidly absorbed by the colonic mucosa and contribute towards energy requirements of the host[49,55,56]. Acetate is mainly metabolised in human muscle, kidney, heart and brain propionate that is cleared up by the liver, is a possible gluceogenic substrate and it might contribute to inhibition of cholesterol synthesis. It might also play a role in the regulation of adipose tissue deposition[57,58].

Butyrate on the other hand is largely metabolised by the colonic epithelium where it serves as the major energy substrate as well as a regulator of cell growth and differentiation[50,59]. It is also acknowledged that it may reduce the risk of colon cancer through stimulating apoptosis. Evidence for the role of butyrate in relation to the administration of ingredient showing a prebiotic effect is described later in the present paper. Rectally administered butyrate was also shown to relieve subjects from inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) symptoms[60].

Proteins reaching and/or produced in the colon are fermented to branched chain fatty acids such as isobutyrate, isovalerate and a range of nitrogenous and sulphur-containing compounds. Unlike carbohydrate fermentation products which are recognised as beneficial to health, some of the end products of amino acids metabolism may be toxic to the host, e.g. ammonia, amines and phenolic compounds[48]. Consequently, excessive fermentation of proteins, especially in the distal colon, has been linked with disease states such as colon cancer and IBD, which generally start in this region of the large intestine before affecting more proximal areas. Thus, it is favourable to shift the gut fermentation towards saccharolytic fermentation over a prolonged period of time into the distal parts.

Conclusions

(1) Overall, saccharolytic fermentation leads to the formation of end products (SCFA) that are recognised as being beneficial to the host.
(2) Protein degradation on the other hand is likely to give rise to toxic substances such as ammonia and amines.
(3) Non-digestible carbohydrates with prebiotic effects selectively stimulate the growth of bacterial genera/species characterised exclusively, or preferably, by saccharolytic fermentation. Such a selective effect on gut microflora composition is likely to be more beneficial to host health than the one which would favour the metabolism of both carbohydrates and proteins. This is well established today for prebiotic effects favouring the growth of bifidobacteria and lactobacilli. Emerging genera are *Eubacterium, Faecalibacterium* and *Roseburia* – although more evidence is needed on their physiological properties.

In vitro *tests for prebiotic effect*

In vitro models aim at studying prebiotic effects independently from their passage through the upper parts of the GI tract even if digestion is sometimes partly simulated. These models are thus only indicative of a potential prebiotic effect, however, they do not prove the prebiotic attribute of a particular product as *in vivo* studies need to be performed to definitively demonstrate that the compound under investigation selectively stimulates the growth and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of microbial genus(era)/species in the gut microbiota that confers health benefits to the host. Since, as discussed earlier, the aim of the present paper is not to provide a list of food ingredients/supplements that classify as prebiotics, the following sections will only refer to a few examples to illustrate the potentials and the limits of *in vitro* tests as well as the advantages and disadvantages of the different experimental models.

Batch culture (pH or non-pH controlled) studies where different substrates are incubated with either pure culture of selected bacteria or faecal slurries subsequently analysed for microbial composition can be used:

(1) to study the selectivity of fermentation (including possible mechanism of selectivity) by, for example, bifidobacteria, lactobacilli of different substrates (e.g. main oligosaccharides contained in soyabeans are raffinose and stachyose which have been found to be good growth promoters of *Bifidobacterium infantis* but not *E. coli*, *Streptococcus faecalis* or *Lactobacillus Lactobacillus acidophilus* [61]) or similar substrates differing in molecular weights (e.g. wheat arabinoxylans) showing, e.g. that molecular weight can be an important factor in selectivity[62].
(2) to show changes in faecal microbiota (e.g. increase in bifidobacteria) but also to compare the efficacy of different substrates (e.g. ITF, starch, polydextrose, fructose and pectin, galactans, xylo-oligosaccharides, soyabean oligosaccharides[63–65]).
(3) to measure and to compare the evolution of gas and SCFA production as a result of the fermentation of different substrates[64].

Single-stage chemostat studies with ITF were used to compare differing techniques to analyse microbiota composition, demonstrating that discrepancies might exist between classical microbiological techniques and molecular approaches. Agar plate counts showed an increase in the combined populations of bifidobacteria and lactobacilli reaching 98·7 % of the total bacterial flora by steady state. However, 16S ribosomal ribonucleic acid genus-specific probes indicated an initial increase in the bifidobacteria population which decreased after 6 d, while lactobacilli thrived in the low pH fermenter (pH 5·2–5·4) maintaining a high population at steady state. Changes observed in the SCFA profile corresponded well with the population data obtained through probe methods[66].

Continuous culture systems inoculated with faecal slurries can be used to investigate fermentation profiles showing, for example that in accordance with earlier studies, bifidobacteria, and to a lesser extent lactobacilli preferred ITF to glucose, whereas bacteroides could not grow on these substrates[67,68]. By varying parameters in the chemostat, the conditions for growth of bifidobacteria and inhibition of bacteroides, clostridia and coliforms can be further analysed showing that low pH (pH 5·5), high culture dilution rate ($0{\cdot}3\,h^{-1}$) and 1 % (w/v) concentration of carbohydrate (i.e. similar to the physico-chemical environment of the proximal colon) are optimum.

The three-stage gut model reproduces the three segments of the colon (proximal/ascending, transverse and distal/descending). It is used to confirm the effects observed in the previous models. Studies using this model show enhanced proliferation of bifidobacteria and/or lactobacilli by ITF and galactans in conditions resembling the proximal/ascending colon[67,69,70]. Whereas studies using models of vessels two and three (modeling transverse and descending colon respectively) displayed very little change in microbiota when fermenting

galactans[70]. In the same model, changes in enzyme activities (β-glycosidase, β-glucuronidase, azoreductase and arylsulphatase) can also be monitored showing their suppression after fermentation of galactans[70] or soyabean–oligosaccharides[71]. Investigating the effect of pH and substrate concentration on the fermentation selectivity of galactans alongside other products, Palframan *et al.*[72] reported a strong bifidogenic effect at pH 6 and at 2 % (w/v) and suggested that they may be well fermented in the distal colon. In another study, galactans of rather low molecular weight (1 % w/v) had a strong bifidogenic effect which showed good persistence through the first two vessels, with a weaker response in the third[73].

The simulator of the human intestinal microbial ecosystem model consists of a series of five temperature and pH-controlled vessels that simulate the stomach, small intestine, ascending, transverse and descending colons, respectively. It can be fed with a complex growth medium containing selected substrates (e.g. ITF) to study their fermentation including the monitoring of metabolites and to analyse their effect on enzyme activities and composition of the microbiota by using a multiphase approach consisting of plate counting, quantitative PCR and DGGE[74]. Results have shown a significant increase in lactobacilli in the transverse and descending colon vessels. Low levels of bifidobacteria were recorded in the colon vessels. DGGE analysis revealed that bacteria in the ascending colon vessel grouped together as the bacteria in the other colon vessels did. Bifidobacteria clustered according to the time point rather than the vessel. Quantitative PCR, however, revealed a significant increase in bifidobacteria population in all three-colon vessels. ITF feeding also resulted in an increase in the production of SCFA, particularly propionate and butyrate, indicating a shift towards a more saccharolytic fermentation. The same model system and metabolic analysis can also be used to investigate the effect of different composition of the same substrates (e.g. of ITF with different molecular weight) on fermentation properties[75].

A more sophisticated *in vitro* model of fermentation in the proximal large intestine is the TNO-intestinal model-2 model[76,77]. This consists of a series of linked glass vessels containing flexible walls. This arrangement allows simulation of peristalsis together with temperature regulation by means of pumping water through the space between the glass and flexible walls. The flow is controlled by computer to more accurately simulate peristalitc mixing. The vessels are further equipped with a hollow fibre membrane in the lumen to simulate absorption of water and SCFA. TNO-intestinal model-2 has been used to investigate the population changes on the fermentation of lactulose using culture-based methods coupled with DGGE[77]. Increases in lactobacilli and enterococci were seen.

Conclusions

(1) *In vitro* models allow comparative studies on fermentation by and/or effects of ingredients showing a potential prebiotic effect on isolated or mixture of bacterial strains, including faecal flora, as well as identification and eventually quantification of the resulting fermentation products especially the SCFA. They also allow comparative analysis of the different analytical methods available to identify and quantify the various genera/species.
(2) They further allow the analysis of the potential/absence of toxin formation or change in enzyme activities potentially associated with beneficial or harmful effects.
(3) The multi-stage models that are designed to mimic the different segments of the intestine, especially the proximal/ascending, transverse and distal/descending colon, are useful in localising the site of the selective stimulation of bacterial growth.
(4) The results can be used to select potential candidate showing prebiotic effect(s) for *in vivo* studies especially in human volunteers, which remain the obligatory steps to definitively prove the prebiotic effect attribute.

Human studies showing prebiotics effect in healthy persons

By reference to the prebiotic concept as defined earlier, criteria for classification as a prebiotic are[4]

(1) resistance to gastric acidity, hydrolysis by mammalian digestive enzymes and GI absorption;
(2) fermentation by intestinal microflora;
(3) selective stimulation of the growth and/or activity(ies) of one or a limited number of intestinal bacteria beneficially associated with health and well-being.

Any dietary component that reaches the colon intact (or partly so) is a potential candidate for prebiotic attribute, however, it is the latter of the three above criteria which is crucial but still the most difficult to fulfil (and which is often ignored when citing ingredients as 'prebiotics'). Even if in addition to ITF and GOS, several dietary carbohydrates (e.g polydextrose, soyabean oligosaccharides, lactosucrose, isomalto-oligosaccharides, gluco-oligosaccharides, xylylo-oligosaccharides, gentio-oligosaccharides, mannan-oligosaccharides, lactose, hemicellulose, resistant starch, resistant dextrins, oat bran, oligosaccharides from melibiose, β-glucans, *N*-acetylchitooligosaccharides, sugar alcohols such as lactitol, sorbitol and maltitol) show some fermentation selectivity when tested in laboratory systems (see section 'In vitro tests for prebiotic effect' in the present paper). However, the ultimate test for prebiotic activity (i.e. human volunteer trials) is lacking for the majority of these compounds. As for today, ITF and GOS are the compounds the most extensively tested in human trials that have confirmed their prebiotic effects as evidence by their ability to change the gut flora composition after a short feeding period at reasonably low doses[20] (Table 8). ITF, the most extensively tested forms in the literature, occur naturally in several foods such as leek, asparagus, chicory, Jerusalem artichoke, garlic, artichoke, onion, wheat, banana and oats, as well as soyabean. However, these foods contain only trace levels of ITF, so developments have taken the approach of removing the active ingredient from such sources (especially chicory roots) and adding them to more frequently consumed products in order to attain levels whereby a prebiotic effect may occur, e.g. cereals, confectionery, biscuits, infant foods, yoghurts, table spreads, bread, sauces, drinks[4]. Other food ingredients/additives with potential prebiotic effects are already under investigations and will certainly be further developed in the future from dietary fibres

Table 8. Example of human studies (healthy persons) designed to determine the prebiotic effect of short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides (scFOS), fructo-oligosaccharides (FOS), galacto-oligosaccharides (GOS) and inulin

Prebiotic	Subject	Dose (g/d)	Duration	Effect	References
Inulin	Eight healthy humans, placebo controlled	34	64 d	Significant increase in bifidobacteria established by FISH	Kruse *et al.*[387]
scFOS	Forty healthy humans	2·5–20	14 d	Significant increase in bifidobacteria levels without excessive gas production	Bouhnik *et al.*[388]
Inulin and FOS	Four or eight healthy humans	15	45 d	Bifidobacteria becoming predominant in faeces with both inulin and oligofructose	Gibson *et al.*[389]
Inulin	Thirty-five elderly constipated humans	20 and 40	19 d	Significant increase in bifidobacteria, decreases in enterococci and fusobacteria	Kleessen *et al.*[390]
FOS in biscuits	Thirty-one healthy humans, double blind placebo controlled	7	42 d	Significant increase in bifidobacteria established via FISH. No change in total bacterial levels	Tuohy *et al.*[391]
FOS	Twelve healthy adult humans	4	42 d	Significant increase in bifidobacteria, no change in total bacteria levels	Buddington *et al.*[392]
FOS	Eight healthy humans, placebo controlled	8	5 weeks	Significant increase in faecal bifidobacteria and decrease in fecal pH	Menne *et al.*[393]
GOS	Twelve healthy humans	15		Significant increase in faecal lactic acid bacteria	Teuri *et al.*[394]
GOS plus FOS	Ninety term infants, placebo controlled	0·4 and 0·8	28 d	Dose-dependent stimulating effect on the growth of bifidobacteria and lactobacilli and softer stool with increasing dosage of supplementation	Moro *et al.*[395]
scFOS or GOS	Forty healthy adults, controlled, double blind, parallel group	10	6 weeks	Significant increase in faecal bifidobacteria	Bouhnik *et al.*[396]
scFOS	Twelve healthy persons, + 65 year	8	4 weeks	Well tolerated and lead to a significant increase in faecal bifidobacteria in healthy elderly subjects	Bouhnik *et al.*[397]
Inulin	Fourteen healthy adults	9	2 weeks	FISH probes show increased bifidobacteria	Harmsen *et al.*[8]
Inulin	Forty-five healthy adults	7·7 then 15·4	3 weeks	Increased bifidobacteria and decreased bacteroides	Kleesen *et al.*[398]
Inulin	Forty adults	8	2 weeks	FISH showed an increase in bifidobacteria	Tuohy *et al.*[399]
Inulin/FOS	Nineteen adults	10	4 weeks	Bifidobacteria increased	De Preter *et al.*[157]
scFOS	Nineteen elderly persons	8	3 weeks	Increased bifidobacteria	Guigoz *et al.*[108]
scFOS	Ten healthy adults	4	2 weeks	Increased bifidobacteria and lactobacilli	Williams *et al.*[400]
Inulin	Thirty healthy volunteers	5 or 8	2 weeks	Both doses increased bifidobacteria, a higher percent of volunteers responded to 8 g/d	Kolida *et al.*[198]
GOS	Thirty healthy adults	3·6 or 7	7 d	Selective bifidogenic effect	Depeint *et al.*[401]

FISH, fluorescent *in situ* hybridization.

and other non-digestible food ingredients. Very preliminary data already exist for some but many more replicate human studies including the quantitative analysis of a wide variety of bacterial genera in faecal microbiota using the more recent methodologies (as described in section 'Microbiota of the gastro-intestinal tract – the large intestine' of the present paper) are needed before this can be the case. Human trials may be carried out on volunteers who are on controlled diets, or are free living. To ensure consistency and exclude incidental findings, more than one human trial is needed and the totality of several human studies for a candidate prebiotic should be considered.

When evaluating a potential prebiotic effect it must be kept in mind that a dose–effect relationship and consequently a minimum effective dose are difficult to establish. Indeed, the major determinant that quantitatively controls the prebiotic effect is the number of targeted bacteria genus/species per gram of faeces the volunteers have before the supplementation with the compound presumed to show a prebiotic effect. This issue has been extensively discussed previously[78].

Conclusions

Apart from protein fermentation, harmful substances may arise from bacterial secondary metabolism.

A prebiotic effect should not lead to stimulate the proteolytic microbiota and thereby reduce overall formation of bacterial metabolism.

Prebiotic effects and immune system

Outline of benefit area

The main authors of this section are Professor Watzl and Dr Wolvers. To provide optimal resistance against a large variety of pathogenic encounters, the immune system has evolved to comprise multiple, functionally differing cell types enabling the development of an immune response that is specifically tailored to clear the pathogen involved. Consequently, a large spectrum of immune parameters involved in various types of responses exist, of which comprehensive descriptions can be found in many textbooks (e.g. *Janeway's Immunobiology* by Murphy *et al.*[79]). Some of these may be measurable in human subjects and can be divided into innate *v.* adaptive, mucosal *v.* systemic, pro-inflammatory *v.* anti-inflammatory, etc. Modulating aspects of the immune system may, in theory, serve several clinical purposes. First, boosting or restoring the very purpose of immune function, i.e. the resistance against infections, may serve as a clinical tool to prevent or treat infectious diseases. Secondly, preventing or treating consequences of an aberrant or undesired immune response, such as those occurring with an allergic response or during chronic inflammatory diseases, are other targets with high clinical relevance.

Although there is no single immune marker that accurately reflects or predicts an individual's resistance to infection, parameters can be identified that play a more prominent role in certain types of infections or conditions than others. For instance, if resistance against the common cold, i.e. a viral upper respiratory tract infection, is the topic of interest, it seems appropriate to investigate natural killer (NK) cell and CD8 + lymphocyte activity, whereas in case of IBD the balance between pro-inflammatory and immuno-regulatory cytokines will be of interest (see section 'Prebiotic effects and IBD' of the present paper). Moreover, in a previous ILSI Europe activity, the suitability of immune markers to measure immuno-modulation by dietary intervention in human subjects was assessed, leading to the identification of four high-suitability markers that are the result of an integrated immune reaction (vaccine-specific serum antibody production, delayed-type hypersensitivity response, vaccine-specific or total secretory IgA in saliva, the response to attenuated pathogens). In addition, a range of medium and low-suitability markers, such as functional activity of cells of the innate immune system (NK cell activity, phagocytosis, T-cell proliferation and various cytokines), were identified[80]. Although the combined measurement of high- and medium-suitability markers may be a way to address aspects of immune status, the ultimate proof of accurate or even improved immune function in practice is a change in the incidence, severity or duration of infectious episodes or conditions with a prominent immune component such as allergies and chronic inflammation.

That modulation of certain aspects of the immune system may result from prebiotic effects and is based on the pivotal interaction between the intestinal microbiota and the host immune system. From several studies in germ-free and gnotobiotic animals, it is clear that the microbiota is essential for an optimal structural and functional development of the immune system[81–84]. The interactive co-existence of the immune system and the microbiota is especially apparent in the intestinal tract where the gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT) has evolved to provide optimal defense against intestinal pathogens, while at the same time tolerating dietary and self-antigens, as well as large populations of commensal non-pathogenic microbes.

Although specialised cells such as the M-cells and, as discovered more recently, also dendritic cells sample material directly from the intestinal lumen[85], enterocytes are key intermediates that convey signals from the intestinal lumen to the mucosal immune system[86,87] and are thus a target for a prebiotic effect on the immune system.

Prebiotic effects may influence the immune system directly or indirectly as a result of intestinal fermentation and promotion of growth of certain members of the gut microbiota. First, the mere presence of increased numbers of a particular microbial genus or species, or a related decrease of other microbes, may change the collective immuno-interactive profile of the microbiota. Through pattern-recognition receptors, such as the toll-like receptors (TLR), both immune cells and enterocytes interact with the so-called pathogen-associated molecular patterns, such as lipopolysaccharides (LPS, a membrane component of Gram-negative bacteria), lipoteichoic acids and unmethylated C-phosphate-G (CpG) DNA that are in fact present on all the micro-organisms surface regardless of pathogenicity. These interactions, possibly in combination with contextual cues of pathogenicity, result in a variety of downstream events eventually leading to cytokine production steering towards an appropriate immune response for the microbial event[88–90].

Secondly, microbial products such as SCFA may interact with immune cells and enterocytes and modify their activity.

G-protein-coupled receptors (GPR) 41 and GPR 43 are identified as receptors for SCFA and are expressed on leukocytes, especially polymorphonuclear cells[91,92], as well as on enterocytes and enteroendocrine cells in the human colon[93,94]. SCFA modulate chemokine expression in intestinal epithelial cells[86], differentially affect pro-inflammatory IL-2 and interferon (IFN)-γ and immuno-regulatory IL-10 production by rat lymphocytes *in vitro* [95], and a recent publication shows the importance of ligation to GPR43 in mice to maintain intestinal homeostasis[96].

Thirdly, the potential direct ligation of pattern recognition receptors on immune cells by prebiotic carbohydrate structures may result in immunomodulation, although there is currently very little evidence for the presence of, for example, a fructose-receptor on immune cells.

In summary, there are plausible mechanisms by which prebiotic effects can modulate immune function parameters. The inaccessibility of the human GI immune system complicates the investigation in this area and most human studies rely on the measurement of *ex vivo* systemic immune markers, of which the predictive value for overall resistance to infections or outcome of immune-related disorders is limited.

Summary of key studies

Several comprehensive reviews have summarised the present knowledge of the immunomodulatory potential of prebiotic effects (especially ITF)[97–101]. A limited number of human studies have been performed but most have limitations as they investigated prebiotic effects in combination with the administration of other ingredients or did not include an appropriate control group.

The prebiotic effects on immune markers that represent a more or less integrated immune response, such as response to vaccination, were investigated in only a few studies (Table 9). Bunout *et al.*[102] supplemented healthy elderly with an oligofructose/inulin mix (6 g/d) in combination with a nutrient supplement, while the control group received maltodextrin with the nutrient supplement. No significant differences were observed in antibody titers after vaccination or on secretory IgA levels[102]. In a second study, the same authors investigated the effect of a supplement with oligofructose on various immune markers including delayed type hypersensitivity and vaccination. Elderly subjects attending a clinic received oligofructose as part of a complex nutritional supplement including *Lactobacillus paracasei*. Elderly subjects attending another clinic not receiving this supplement served as controls. Delayed type hypersensitivity response and antibody titres after vaccination did not differ between groups[103].

In infants aged 6–12 months (87 % breast-fed), the intake of oligofructose as part of an infant cereal had no effect on diarrhoea prevalence (see section 'Use of prebiotic effects for paediatric disorders – diarrhoeal diseases' of the present paper) and on vaccination-induced antibody titres to *Haemophilus influenza* when compared with the infant cereal alone[104]. Besides, the fact that a rather low dose of oligofructose was supplemented, breast-feeding may already have provided adequate amounts of human milk oligosaccharides in the present study. Also in infants at high risk for allergies, supplementation with a GOS/fructo-oligosaccharides (FOS) mixtures did not change antibody levels after a standard vaccination[105]. In contrast, early-life exposure of non-breast-fed infants to oligosaccharides had an effect on natural Ig production, as a mixture of GOS/FOS was shown to result in significantly higher faecal secreteory Immunoglobulin A (sIgA) concentrations as a consequence of the prebiotic effect[106,107]. Overall, there are currently no data that support beneficial prebiotic effects on the response to vaccination, but data on faecal secretory IgA in infants are promising when supplemented with a specific combination of compounds showing prebiotic effects.

In addition to the effects on integrated immune responses, the prebiotic effect on specific immune markers has been tested in a few studies of varying quality with differential outcomes (Table 9). In healthy elderly people receiving ITF-$_{DPav3-4}$ (6 g/d), a decrease in phagocytosis and IL-6 mRNA expression in peripheral blood mononuclear cell was found[108]. The present study was a one-arm study using baseline for comparison. Whether the tested ingredient induced the observed immunological changes cannot be answered from the present study. Increased NK cell activity and IL-2 production by peripheral blood mononuclear cell (Lymphokine production by mononuclear cells) were found in a synbiotic study in elderly[103]. As this was a synbiotic intervention, a causal conclusion about an immunomodulation of the prebiotic intervention cannot be drawn. No effect was observed on secretion of IL-4, IFNγ and lymphocyte proliferation in cultured peripheral blood mononuclear cell[102].

A study investigating the application of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in pregnant women showed no effect on the composition of lymphocyte subsets or cytokine secretion patterns in circulating lymphocytes of the off-spring as assessed in cord-blood[109]. For safety reasons, the dosage was relatively low in the present study.

A well-designed and controlled human intervention study investigated the effect of a mixture of galactans on the immune system of healthy elderly volunteers. The present study reported that intake of such GOS (galactans) (5·5 g/d) for 10 weeks significantly increased phagocytosis, NK cell activity and the production of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10, while the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-1β, IL-6, TNFα was reduced[110]. A clear positive correlation between numbers of bifidobacteria in faecal samples and both, NK cell activity and phagocytosis, was observed. The present study suggests that a mixture of galactans beneficially affects the immune system and that the achieved effects may be indirect and mediated via a prebiotic effect, i.e. a change in microbiota composition. A few of the trials described earlier also show changes in immune markers alongside changes in the faecal microbiota, mainly increase in bifidobacteria. These studies thus provide data for the suggested link between a change in the flora and immunomodulation, but more studies showing correlative findings are required for convincing evidence.

Only a few studies that investigated the prebiotic effect on immune-related clinical end points such as resistance to infections, allergies and IBD have also included measurements on immune markers. Combining clinical end points with such functional markers may provide a possible mechanistic explanation for the observed effects. In a small number of patients with moderately active Crohn's disease, consumption of 15 g ITF/d reported positive clinical outcomes (see section

Table 9. The prebiotic effect on immune markers

Subject	Trial design	Groups	*N*	Duration	Key findings of the prebiotic intervention on immune parameters and effect on microbiota	Reference
Healthy elderly (>70 years)	R, PC parellel	(a) Daily vitamin & protein supplement with 6 g oligofructose/inulin (b) Daily vitamin & protein supplement	(a) 23 (b) 20	28 weeks	No effect on secretory IgA, No effect on serum titers after vaccination (influenza A and B and pneumococcus) No effect on secretion of IL-4, IFNγ, and lymphocyte proliferation in cultured PBMC stimulated with phytohemagglutinin and influenza antigen	Bunout *et al.*[102]
Newborn non-breastfed infants	R, DB, PC parallel	(a) Standard infant formula (b) Prebiotic formula containing mixture of 0·6 g GOS/FOS)/100 ml formula (c) Probiotic formula containing 6·0 × 109 cfu B. animalis/100 ml formula	(a) 19 (b) 19 (c) 19	32 weeks	Trend towards higher fecal sIgA (significant at week 16) Trend towards higher percentage of fecal bifidobacteria Significantly lower fecal pH[402]	Bakker-Zierikzee *et al.*[106]
Peruvian breast-fed infants (6–12 months)	1) R, DB, PC parallel 2) Idem	(a) Cereal supplemented with oligofructose with of average 0·67 g OF/d (b) Control cereal (a) Cereal supplemented 1 mg Zn/d and with oligofructose (average 0·67 g OF/d) (b) Cereal supplemented 1 mg Zn/d	(a) 141 (b) 141 (a) 174 (b) 175	6 months 6 months	No effect on antibody titres after *Haemophilus influenza* B vaccination No effect on antibody titres after H. influenza B vaccination *Effect on microbiota not adressed*	Duggan *et al.*[104]
Nursing home elderly (77–97 years)	Uncontrolled	8 g oligofructose/d	19	3 weeks	Compared to baseline: Increase in % CD4 and CD8 lymphocytes Decrease in phagocytic activity (mean fluorescence) in granulocytes and monocytes Reduced IL-6 mRNA expression in PBMC Increase in fecal bifidobacteria and Bacteroides No effect on fecal Enterobacteriae, Enterococci and Lactobacilli	Guigoz *et al.*[108]
Newborn healthy infants	R, DB, PC parallel	(a) Infant milk formula with 6 g/l Short-chain GOS and long-chain FOS ratio 9:1 (b) Infant formula without prebiotics	(a) 21 (b) 25	26 weeks	Increase in fecal sIgA in those exclusively formula fed Increase in % of fecal bifidobacteria and decrease in % of fecal Clostridia	Scholtens *et al.*[107]
Elderly (64–79 years)	DPRPC, CO	(a) galacto-oligosaccharide 5·5 g/d (b) maltodextrin	44	10 weeks with 4 weeks washout	Increase in *ex vivo* NK cell activity; Increase in *ex vivo* phagocytosis; Increase in *ex vivo* IL-10 production by PBMC; Decrease in *ex vivo* IL-6, TNFa and IL-1 b production by PBMC; Positive correlation between numbers of *Bifidobacterium spp., Lactobacillus-Enterococcus spp., and the C. coccoides–E. rectale* group with % and total number of phagocyting cells; Negative correlation between numbers of *Bacteroides* spp. and *E. coli* with % and total number of phagocyting cells	Vulevic *et al.*[110]
Pregnant women	R, DB, PC	(a) GOS/lcFOS (9 g/d) (b) Maltodextrin	48	From week 25 of gestation until delivery	No change of fetal (cord-blood) immune parameters (lymphocyte subsets, cytokine secretion); Increased proportions of bifidobacteria in maternal fecal samples; No change in the proportion of lactobacilli; No change in bifidobacteria and lactobacilli percentages in infants	Shadid *et al.*[109]
Newborn infants at risk for allergy	R, DC, PC	(a) Hypoallergenic whey formula with 8 g/l GOS/FOS in a 9:1 ratio (b) Hypoallergenic whey formula with 8 g/l maltodextrine (placebo)	(a) 41 (b) 43	6 months	Significant reduction in plasma levesl of total IgE, IgG1, IgG2 and IgG3; No effect on IgG4; Cows milk protein-specific IgG1 was significantly decreased. No effect on response to DTP vaccine; Significant increase in the number of fecal bifidobacteria; No effect on fecal lactobacilli counts[113]	Van Hoffen *et al.*[105]

R, PC, randomised, placebo-control; IFNγ, interferon γ PBMC, peripheral blood mononuclear cell; R, DB, PC, randomised, double-blind, placebo-control; GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; NK, natural killer; CD, Crohn's disease; CO, crossover; OF, oligofructose; DPRPC, double-parallel, randomised, placebo-control; DTP, diphteria, tetanus, polio.
Human studies are detailed that allow interpretation of the effect of prebiotics alone, not of the combination of prebitocs with other ingredients.
Studies describe the effect on immune markers; studies that focus on clinical endpoints are summarized elsewhere in this paper (pediatrics, inflammatory bowel disease).

'Prebiotic effects in Crohn's disease' of the present paper), while IL-10 production by mucosal dendritic cells isolated from biopsies was increased as did expression of TLR-2 and TLR-4[111]. Although some of the findings correlate with those found in animals studies[112], the open label character of the study needs to be considered.

In infants at high risk of allergies, a mixture of GOS/FOS supplemented for 6 months reduced plasma level of total IgE, IgG1, IgG2 and IgG3, whereas no effect on IgG4 was observed. In addition, cow's milk protein-specific IgG1 was significantly decreased[105]. This may be beneficial change in infants at risk of allergies, and although no direct correlations were reported, the same study found a significant reduction in the incidence of atopic dermatitis in a subpopulation of the GOS/FOS group[113].

Experimental data from animal studies indicate that, besides the systemic immune system, the GALT may be the primary target of immunomodulatory prebiotic effects. Biomarkers to assess functional changes in the GALT include sIgA, cytokine production and lymphocyte numbers. Prebiotic effects have been shown to increase sIgA concentration in the intestinal lumen, to increase B cell numbers in Peyer's patches, and, in intestinal tissues, to enhance IL-10 protein secretion and to decrease mRNA expression and protein concentrations of pro-inflammatory cytokines[98–101]. Genes related to intestinal immune responses seem to be a primary target of the prebiotic effects[114]. Further, functional activities of NK cells and phagocytes isolated from various immune tissues were significantly increased but depending on the source of immune cells (Peyer's patches, mesenteric lymph nodes, intraepithelial lymphocytes) the prebiotic effects may differ[115–117]. This illustrates the need to differentially study the prebiotic effects of on various immune compartments. The lack of sufficient tools to investigate prebiotic effects in the human GALT hampers insights into the possible differential impact on the mucosal *v.* the systemic immune system.

Key points

(1) Plausible hypotheses exist that ingredients showing a prebiotic effect may potentially affect the immune system as a direct or indirect result of the change in the composition and/or fermentation profile of the microbiota.
(2) There is currently limited, yet promising evidence that such ingredients modulate immune markers in human subjects. Well-designed human intervention studies are few.
(3) Data that show increased faecal sIgA levels in infants are promising and need to be confirmed.
(4) While several studies report changes in the faecal microbial composition alongside with changes in immune markers, only one study so far has correlated these findings. More studies addressing such correlation are needed to establish a firm link between changes in the microbiota and immune markers.
(5) Despite the wealth of evidence that compounds with prebiotic effects affect the intestinal microbiota, and modulate immune parameters, it is of importance to know whether these immunomodulatory effects result in a clinically relevant outcome, i.e. improved resistance against infections, or impairment of allergies and inflammation. Preliminary yet promising clinical end point studies exist which integrate the measurement of immune markers as possible explanation of prebiotic efficacy.
(6) Animal studies indicate that immunological effects may vary depending upon the anatomical site of origin of the immune cell (e.g. Peyer's patches *v.* intraepithelial lymphocytes). However, as the human GALT as primary target of the prebiotic effects cannot be easily addressed in human intervention studies, insights are difficult to obtain and thus still limited.

Recommendations

Data from well-designed, controlled human intervention studies with healthy subjects do not allow a final conclusion about the effects of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on the immune system. Data so far are available for ITF and GOS, but few studies have been published so far. Therefore, further studies with adequate methodology, investigating immune parameters such as laid out by the ILSI Task Force on Nutrition and Immunity in Man[80], are warranted to obtain further insights on how prebiotic effects may modify immune function markers. Furthermore, tools should be developed to measure the impact of prebiotic effects on the GALT in human subjects, so an understanding of the tissue-specific effects can be achieved. Findings of such immunomodulation should lead to hypotheses on the potential use of compounds with prebiotic effects in relevant health-related conditions, which could then be tested in well-designed clinical end point studies. In addition, effects of different prebiotic chemical structures of prebiotics, dosing and timing of supplementation have to be studied.

Prebiotic effects in paediatrics

Oligosaccharides and prebiotic effects in infant formulae

The main authors for this section are Professor Szajewska and Dr Stahl. The use of non-digestible carbohydrates in infant formulae and follow-on formulae has been commented on by the Committee on Nutrition of the European Society for Paediatric Gastroenterology, Hepatology and Nutrition[118]. Based on the evidence obtained in a search up to January 2004, the Committee concluded that only a limited number of studies have evaluated the effects of the addition of substances with prebiotic effects to dietetic products for infants. Only one type of oligosaccharide mixture of galactans and ITF consisting of GOS and a high molecular weight fraction of inulin in a ratio of 9:1 (GOS/FOS) was evaluated. The Committee stated that although the administration of oligosaccharides with prebiotic effects has the potential to increase the total number of bifidobacteria in faeces and may also soften stools, there is no published evidence of any clinical benefits after addition of oligosaccharides with prebiotic effects to dietetic products for infants. No general recommendation on the use of oligosaccharide supplementation in infancy for preventive or therapeutic purposes can be made. The available data on the oligosaccharide mixtures in infant formulae do not

British Journal of Nutrition

demonstrate adverse effects. Validated clinical outcome measures of prebiotic effects in infants should be characterised in further well designed and carefully conducted randomised controlled trials (RCT), with relevant inclusion/exclusion criteria and adequate sample sizes. Such trials should also define the optimal quantities, types and intake durations.

A number of studies have been published thereafter on the addition of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect to dietetic products for infants and recently reviewed[119]. These ingredients have been used either as one compound[120–123] or as a mixture of different neutral and acidic oligosaccharides[124]. Collectively, these studies confirm that the administration of oligosaccharides with prebiotic effects in dietetic products have the potential to increase dose dependently the total number of bifidobacteria in faeces, although at present, it is not possible to define the number of bifidobacteria that would constitute normal/optimal microbiota and to soften stools. Furthermore, prebiotic effects modulate stool pH, SCFA pattern similar to those of breast-fed infants. Whether any of these effects *per se* is of benefit is currently not well established. Clinical outcomes related to the use of dietetic products for infants supplemented with prebiotic effects are discussed in the forthcoming sections (e.g. effect on allergic diseases, infections).

Currently, the Directive 2006/141/EC on infant formulae and follow-on formulae specifically allows the addition of GOS–FOS in a ratio of 9/1 and in a quantity of 0·8 g/100 ml prepared product[125]. The GOS and FOS were specified as 'a combination of 90 % oligogalactosyl-lactose and 10 % high molecular weight oligofructosyl-saccharose'. This Directive also states that other combinations and maximum levels of FOS and GOS may be used if they satisfy the nutritional requirements of infants in good health as established by generally accepted scientific data.

Use of prebiotic effects in complementary foods for children

One controlled trial (RCT)[126] conducted in fifty-six healthy, term infants aged 4–12 months evaluated the tolerance and GI effects of an infant cereal supplemented with either ITF or placebo for 28 d. Compared with the control group, stool consistency was less often described as 'hard' and more likely to be described as 'soft' or 'loose' in the ITF-supplemented group. There was no difference between the groups in crying, spitting-up or colic. No difference in stool pH between the groups was found. There was also no significant difference in growth between the two groups. Clinical outcomes were not reported. The limitations of the present study include the use of non-validated tool for parental assessment of stool consistency, a small sample size and a short follow-up period.

Another double-blind RCT[127] involving thirty-five infants aged 4–6 months studied the effect of adding GOS/FOS to solid foods results in an increase in the faecal proportion of bifidobacteria in the intestinal microbiota. Intention-to-treat analysis revealed no significant difference between the two study groups. Only per-protocol analysis involving twenty children who complied with the protocol showed that the faecal percentage of bifidobacteria increased from 43 to 57 % ($P=0{\cdot}03$) from weeks 0 to 6 but did non-significantly change in the control group (36 and 32 %, respectively, $P=0{\cdot}4$). There were no statistically significant differences in stool frequency and consistency.

More recently an indication for a prebiotic effect with ITF-fortified milk in children aged 7–8 years has also been reported[128].

Use of prebiotic effects for paediatric disorders

The effect of prebiotics in paediatric diseases has to be seen under the different aspect either of treatment or of prophylaxis. Theoretically, – and also clearly demonstrated in this part of the manuscript – prebiotics are more effective in prophylaxis more than in treatment. That seems logically because the prebiotic effect can only be seen after a certain period of time which is needed for the development of the microbiota (and which is significantly longer than the duration of an acute diarrhoea). In consequence, prebiotics are ideal candidates for prophylaxis but not for treatment.

Diarrhoeal diseases. It can be hypothesised that the continuous use of products with prebiotic effects might, by providing an immunologic stimulus (see section 'Prebiotic effects and immune system' of the present paper), be useful in preventing infectious diseases commonly encountered by young children.

In a large well-designed RCT performed in infants aged 6–12 months (*n* 282), Duggan *et al.*[104] compared an infant cereal supplemented with oligofructose with a non-supplemented cereal. There was no difference in the number of diarrhoeal episodes, episodes of severe diarrhoea or episodes of dysentery. No significant difference was found in the mean duration of diarrhoea. During a second part of the same trial involving 349 subjects, Zn was added to both oligofructose-supplemented and control cereals[104]. Again, no significant difference was found in any of the outcomes studied between the groups. In the both trials, post-immunisation titres of the antibody to *Haemophilus influenzae* type B were similar in all groups, as were gains in height (no data on weight), number of visits to the clinic, hospitalisations and use of antibiotics. The prebiotic dose was with 0·25 g/kg d lower that the prebiotic level mentioned in the EC directive with 0·8 g/100 ml – assuming an intake of 150–200 ml/kg and day – thus resulting in 1·2–1·6 g prebiotics/kg and day[125].

More recently, Bruzzese *et al.*[129] evaluated the effect of an infant formula containing the prebiotic mixture GOS/FOS compared with a standard infant formula in an open placebo-controlled involving 342 healthy infants with 12 months follow-up. Compared with the controls, the use of prebiotic-supplemented formula was associated with a significant reduction in the incidence of gastroenteritis (0·12 ± 0·04 *v.* 0·29 ± 0·05 episodes/child per 12 months; $P=0{\cdot}015$), and in the rate of children with ≥1 episode of acute diarrhoea (10/96 *v.* 26/109, Relative Risk (RR) 0·44 (95 % CI 0·22, 0·86)). The findings regarding the prevention of GI infections are promising for efficacy. However, there are some methodological limitations to the study, including no allocation concealment, no blind control and no intention-to-treat analysis (this analysis aims to test for effectiveness under field conditions); this may result in selection, performance and/or attrition biases. The impact on respiratory tract infections is discussed under section 'Respiratory tract infections'.

One RCT[130] found similar number of episodes of diarrhoea in the group of infants fed extensively hydrolysed whey formula supplemented either with 0·8 g GOS/FOS or with maltodextrin as placebo.

Acute infectious gastroenteritis. The efficacy and safety of administering a mixture of non-digestible carbohydrates, including soya polysaccharide 25 %, α-cellulose 9 %, gum Arabic 19 %, oligofructose 18·5 %, inulin 21·5 % and resistant starch 7 %, as an adjunct to oral rehydration therapy in the treatment of acute infectious diarrhoea was assessed in one RCT involving 144 boys with mild-to-moderate dehydration. It was hypothesised that with the incorporation of non-digestible carbohydrates, some of them (e.g. galactans and ITF) with prebiotic effects might promote fermentation in the colon, and thus, decrease faecal volume and the duration of the diarrhoeal illness. Intention-to-treat analysis (relevant for effectiveness) did not show a significant difference in the mean 48-h stool volume, the duration of the diarrhoea after randomisation, the duration of hospital stay and unscheduled intravenous rehydration. No significant adverse effects were noted[131]. An explanation that no effects could be detected could originate from the type and the amount of non-digestible carbohydrates added to the oral rehydration solution. An average dose of 10–15 g per episode in relatively mild diarrhoea may be simply insufficient to achieve a shorter duration of diarrhoea. Furthermore, it is possible that the timing of the intervention was inappropriate, making the addition of non-digestible carbohydrates to exclusive oral rehydration therapy an insufficient measure.

Antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. The rationale for the use of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect for the prevention of antibiotic-associated diarrhoea is based on the assumption that the use of antibiotics leads to intestinal dysbiosis and that this is a key factor in the pathogenesis of antibiotic-associated diarrhoea[132]. In contrast to probiotics[133–137], there is a paucity of data on the prebiotic effects in preventing antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. One paediatric double-blind RCT[138] involved 140 children (1–2 years of age) who were treated with amoxicillin for acute bronchitis. The present study revealed no significant difference in the incidence of diarrhoea in children receiving ITF administered in a milk formula (4·5 g/l) for 21 d after completion of antibiotic treatment compared with placebo (10 % *v.* 6 %, RR 0·6, 95 % CI 0·2–1·8). However, ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in a milk formula increased faecal bifidobacteria early after amoxicillin treatment.

Respiratory tract infections. In the most recent RCT by Bruzzese *et al.*[129] described earlier, it was found that compared with controls, the use of an infant formula with GOS/FOS was associated with a similar number of episodes of upper respiratory tract infections ($P=0·4$), similar number of children with greater than three episodes upper respiratory tract infections (17/60 *v.* 29/65; $P=0·06$), although the number of children with multiple antibiotic courses per year was lower in children receiving ingredients showing a prebiotic effect (24/60 *v.* 43/65; $P=0·004$).

One RCT[130] found that infants fed extensively hydrolysed whey formula supplemented with 0·8 g GOS/FOS compared with the placebo group had fewer episodes of physician-diagnosed overall and upper respiratory tract infections ($P<0·01$), fever episodes ($P<0·00\,001$) and fewer antibiotic prescriptions ($P<0·05$).

Prebiotic effects and atopy

Atopic eczema is an itchy inflammatory skin condition with associated epidermal barrier dysfunction. Therapeutic options (emollients and topical steroids for mild-to-moderate eczema; topical or systemic calcineurin inhibitors, UV phototherapy, or systemic azathioprine for moderate-to-severe eczema) are relatively limited and often unsatisfactory, prompting interest in alternative treatment methods.

The rationale for using prebiotic effects in preventing atopic disorders is based on the concept that prebiotic effects modify the intestinal flora of formula-fed infants towards that of breast-fed infants. The intestinal flora of atopic children has been found to differ from that of controls with atopic subjects having more clostridia and tending to have fewer bifidobacteria than non-atopic subjects[139]. Thus, there is indirect evidence that differences in the neonatal gut microbiota may precede or coincide with the early development of atopy. This further suggests a crucial role for a balanced commensal gut microbiota in the maturation of the early immune system.

The Cochrane Review published in 2007[140] aimed at determining the effect of different ingredients showing a prebiotic effect (GOS/FOS, only FOS, GOS together with polydextrose and lactulose) on the prevention of allergic disease or food hypersensitivity in infants. Only two RCT of reasonable methodological quality according to the reviewers and involving 432 infants reported outcomes related to allergic disease. The reviewers concluded that there is insufficient evidence to determine the role of prebiotic supplementation of infant formula for the prevention of allergic disease and food hypersensitivity.

One of the included RCT[140] investigated the effect of the prebiotic mixture (GOS/FOS; dosage: 8 g/l) on the intestinal flora and the cumulative incidence of atopic dermatitis during the first 6 months of life in infants at risk for allergy (with at least one parent with documented allergic disease confirmed by physician). Of the 259 infants, 206 (79·5 %) infants who were randomly assigned to receive extensively hydrolysed whey formula supplemented either with 0·8 g GOS/FOS (experimental group, *n* 102) or with maltodextrin as placebo (control group, *n* 104) were included in the per-protocol analysis. The frequency of atopic eczema in the experimental group was significantly reduced compared with the placebo group (9·8 % *v.* 23·1 %, RR 0·42 (95 % CI 0·2, 0·8)), number needed to treat eight (95 % CI 5, 31). In a subgroup of ninety-eight infants, the parents provided fresh stool samples for microbiological analysis using plating techniques; the faecal counts of bifidobacteria were significantly higher in the group fed the GOS/FOS formula compared to the placebo group. No significant difference was found for the lactobacilli count between groups. Follow-up of the present study showed that at 2 years the cumulative incidences of atopic dermatitis, recurrent wheezing and allergic urticaria were higher in the placebo group (27·9, 20·6 and 10·3 %, respectively) than in the intervention group (13·6, 7·6 and 1·5 %) ($P<0·05$). This is the first observation that prebiotic effects are able to reduce the incidence of atopic diseases and that this effect persists beyond the intervention period. This assessment is based on a per protocol evaluation which aims at testing efficacy; due to the high drop-out rate (20 % at 6 months and 48 % at 2 years of age) and lacking intention-to-treat analysis,

effectiveness for field practice needs to be confirmed[141] (see section 'Prebiotic effects and mineral absorption' of the present paper).

Conclusions

(1) Only two dietary non-digestible oligosaccharides fulfil the criteria for prebiotic classification. These are galactans and ITF. Only a limited number of RCT evaluating the efficacy and safety of in paediatric population are available. Some of these studies had methodological limitations.
(2) Typically, the studies could show efficacy, i.e. statistical effects based on per protocol analysis. However, they may need to be confirmed by effectiveness using intention-to-treat analysis.
(3) Supplementation with such ingredients has the potential to increase the total number of bifidobacteria in faeces and reduce some pathogens. It also can reduce stool pH, increase the concentrations of faecal SCFA like observed in breast-fed infants. The clinical meaning of these findings is still under debate.
(4) There is evidence from controlled trials that effects are able to reduce the incidence of atopic diseases and that this effect persists beyond the intervention period. Confirmation of these data for effectiveness is needed.
(5) A reduction in the risk of some infectious diseases is likely, but needs to be confirmed for effectiveness.
(6) The available data on prebiotic effects do not demonstrate adverse effects.

Prebiotic effects and gastro-intestinal disorders

Prebiotic effects and gastro-intestinal infections

The main authors for this section are Professor Guarner and Dr Respondek (IBS), Dr Whelan (IBD) and Professor Rowland (colon cancer and bacterial activities). In adults, the use of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in the fight against infections has hardly been studied. A few studies, dealing with different infectious problems, have been reported.

One study dealing with traveller's diarrhoea reports that consumption of 10 g ITF/d for a 2-week pre-travel period continued during a 2-week travel period to high and medium risk destinations had no effect on the prevention of traveller's diarrhoea, although the sense of 'well-being' was improved[142]. Furthermore, a study of patients consuming 12 g ITF/d while taking broad-spectrum antibiotics for 7 d, followed by another 7 d of the same treatment reported no difference from the placebo group regarding diarrhoea incidence, *Clostridium difficile* infection and hospital stay, while the number of faecal bifidobacteria increased significantly[143]. In contrast, continued consumption of 12 g ITF/d for 30 d after the cessation of *C. difficile*-associated diarrhoea reduced the relapse rate, while increasing bifidobacteria levels[144].

Overall, the number of studies on the efficacy of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in the prevention of infectious diseases is limited. Some positive outcomes exist alongside studies reporting no-effects. Clearly, a rationale is present for the use of such ingredients. However, any direct effect of the studied ingredients on the immune system cannot be excluded and the measurement of the putative associated effect on the microbiota is not always included in these studies, hindering the formation of any conclusions on possible underlying mechanisms.

Prebiotic effects and irritable bowel syndrome

The irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a functional bowel disorder manifested by chronic, recurring abdominal pain or discomfort associated with disturbed bowel habit, in the absence of structural abnormalities likely to account for these symptoms[145]. The symptomatic array may include abdominal pain, discomfort, distension, cramping, distress, bloating, excess flatulence and variable changes in frequency and form of stools. Such symptomatic episodes may be experienced by almost every individual, and in order to separate IBS from transient gut symptoms, experts have emphasised the chronic and relapsing nature of IBS and have proposed diagnostic criteria based on the recurrence rate of such symptoms[146]. IBS is one of the most common intestinal disorders both in industrialised and in developing countries, and it is known to generate significant health care costs[145].

A precise aetiology for IBS is not recognised. However, epidemiological studies have identified a series of pathogenetic factors, including genetic and early environmental conditioning, cognitive/emotional adaptation, altered response to stress and inflammatory post-infectious processes of the gut mucosa, etc.[145]. It has been shown that IBS patients have abnormal reflexes and perception in response to gut stimuli[147]. In subsets of patients, the underlying defects appear to be altered GI motility, visceral hypersensitivity, small bowel bacterial overgrowth, excess gas production, abnormalities in the composition of the gut microbiota (Table 10) or combinations of them[148].

Among the modifications of the gut microbiota, a decrease of bifidobacteria and more specifically *Bifidobacterium catenulatum* has been observed in IBS patients in comparison to healthy subjects[149–155].

Hypothetically, some of these disturbances may be corrected or counteracted by prebiotic effects. Indeed, compounds showing such effects are known to modulate the digestive microbiota and particularly to stimulate the growth of bifidobacteria especially when the initial level is low[64]. Furthermore, human studies with ITF or lactulose have shown that such prebiotics modulate gut transit[148,156], decrease putrefactive activity within the gut lumen[157], prevent GI infections[142,144] and mitigate inflammatory responses[111,158,159].

Indirect evidence for beneficial effects of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on abdominal well-being was initially obtained in human trials addressing other primary end points. For instance, Cummings *et al.*[142] tested the effectiveness of ITF in preventing diarrhoea in 244 healthy subjects, travelling to high and medium risk destinations for travellers' diarrhoea (see section 'Prebiotic effects and gastro-intestinal infections' of the present paper for discussion of the effects on risk of intestinal infections). This randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study showed that consumption of 10 g ITF daily gave a significantly better sense of

BJN British Journal of Nutrition

Table 10. Comparison of faecal microbiota between irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and healthy control subjects

Subject (*n*)	Results of IBS *v.* control subjects	Reference
IBS subjects (20)	Lower number of coliforms, lactobacilli and bifidobacteria	Balsari *et al.*[149]
Control subjects (20)		
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria) (25)	Lower number of bifidobacteria	Si *et al.*[150]
Control subjects (25)	Higher number of *Clostridium perfringens*	
	Higher number of Enterobacteriaceae	
	Lower bifidobacteria:Enterobacteriaceae ratio	
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria) (26)	Higher number of coliforms	Mattö *et al.*[403]
Control subjects (25)	Higher proportion of aerobic bacteria	
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria) (27)	Lower number of *Lactobacillus spp* in diarrhoea predominant IBS	Malinen *et al.*[151]
Control subjects (22)	Higher number of *Veillonella spp* in constipation predominant IBS	
	Lower number of *Bifidobacterium catenulatum* and *Clostridium coccoides*	
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria)	Lower number of *Lactobacillus spp*, bifidobacteria and lactate-utilizing bacteria	Chassard *et al.*[152]
Control subjects	Higher number of Sulphate-reducing bacteria	
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria) (16)	Lower proportion of *Clostridium coccoides* and *Eubacterium rectale* in constipation predominant IBS	Maukonen *et al.*[155]
Control subjects (16)		
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria) (24)	Lower number of *Collinsella*; lower prevalence of *Collinsella aerofaciens*;	Kassinen *et al.*[153]
Control subjects (23)	Lower number of *Coprococcus eutactus*	
	Lower number of *Bifidobacterium catenulatum*	
IBS subjects (Rome II criteria) (41)	Lower number of bifidobacteria	Kerckhoffs *et al.*[154]
Control subjects (26)	Lower number of *Bifidobacterium catenulatum*	

'well-being' during the holiday, as recorded in post-study questionnaires. Likewise, Casellas *et al.*[159] performed a prospective, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial to test the effect of ITF (12 g/d) in patients with active ulcerative colitis (UC). Interestingly, the study observed a significant decrease in abdominal symptoms with treatment but not with placebo, as assessed with the validated questionnaire of dyspepsia-related health scale[160].

Few studies have investigated the effect of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in patients with IBS. The study by Olesen & Gudmand-Hoyer[161] tested a high dose of finally 20 g ITF during 12 weeks. The authors hypothesised that IBS symptoms may be provoked by large quantities of fermentable carbohydrates in the colon. After 4–6 weeks on treatment, IBS symptoms worsened, as expected, in patients on 20 g ITF/d and improved in patients on placebo. However, continuous treatment for 12 weeks resulted in adaptation and there were no differences between groups: symptoms improved in 58 % of the ITF group and in 65 % of the placebo group, and symptoms worsened in 8 % of the ITF group and in 13 % of the placebo group. Large doses of any fermentable carbohydrates should not be recommended to IBS patients.

Hunter *et al.*[162] found no effect of 2 g ITF (three times daily) against placebo in a reduced group of IBS patients studied in a double-blind crossover trial. The Rome team of experts on functional bowel disorders do not recommend the use of a crossover design for IBS treatment trials as they have the potential disadvantages of carryover effects and unmasking the study product by differences in taste and palatability[163]. Dughera *et al.*[164] reported a positive effect of a synbiotic (including short-chain ITF at 2·5 g/d) on clinical manifestations and intestinal function in patients with IBS. However, this was an open-label and uncontrolled study, and IBS studies with subjective outcomes are prone to study bias[148].

To date, there are two published studies of adequate study design reporting the effects of an ingredient showing a prebiotic effect in IBS. The first study screened 2235 subjects and recruited and randomised 105 patients with IBS fulfilling Rome II criteria with minor intensity of symptoms as assessed by an initial questionnaire. Treatment with short-chain ITF at 5 g/d for 6 weeks reduced incidence and intensity of symptoms as compared to the placebo product. Prebiotic treatment also improved functional digestive disorders related quality of life[165].

The second study randomised forty-four subjects according to Rome II criteria into three groups either receiving 7 g/d placebo, 3·5 g/d of ingredient showing a prebiotic effect and 3·5 g/placebo and 7 g/d of the tested ingredient for 6 weeks. The prebiotic treatment significantly improved flatulence, bloating and composite score of symptoms as well-subjective global assessment. It also increased the proportion of bifidobacteria in faecal samples[166].

In summary, the two available studies with up to date standard provided positive outcomes for both the ITF and GOS tested up to 7 g. Results with less positive outcomes used either higher or lower doses.

Recommendations

Ingredients showing a prebiotic effect are likely to play a role in the symptomatic control of IBS. Evidence accumulated so

far in well-designed clinical studies is limited, but suggests possible benefits at moderate doses. Further studies with adequate methodology are warranted.

Key points

(1) The IBS is a functional bowel disorder manifested by chronic, recurring abdominal pain or discomfort in the absence of structural abnormalities.
(2) The symptomatic array includes abdominal distension, cramping, distress, bloating, excess flatulence and variable changes in frequency and form of stools. Such symptomatic episodes may be experienced by almost every individual.
(3) The underlying defects appear to be altered GI motility, visceral hypersensitivity, small bowel bacterial overgrowth, excess gas production and abnormalities in the composition of the gut microbiota or combinations of these.
(4) Ingredient showing a prebiotic effect may counteract these disturbances as they were shown to modulate gut transit, decrease putrefactive activity within the gut lumen, prevent GI infections and mitigate inflammatory responses.
(5) To date, there are only two published studies of adequate study design testing such ingredient in IBS. Both studies improved the subjects' symptoms.

Prebiotic effects and inflammatory bowel disease

IBD is a chronic relapsing and remitting disorder characterised by inflammation, ulceration and stricturing of the GI tract. UC and Crohn's disease (CD) are the two main types of IBD. In Europe, the incidence ranges from 1·5 to 20·3 cases per 100,000 person-years for UC and from 0·7 to 9·8 cases per 100,000 person-years for CD, meaning that up to 2·2 million people in Europe currently live with IBD[167].

UC causes continuous mucosal inflammation that is restricted to the colon, whereas CD causes discontinuous transmural inflammation anywhere throughout the GI tract, although it most frequently affects the terminal ileum[168]. Symptoms common to both UC and CD include diarrhoea, faecal urgency and incontinence. Severe abdominal pain and rectal bleeding are common and complications such as fissuring and abscesses may occur. These symptoms can have a profound impact on patients, with evidence of impaired nutritional status[169] and quality of life[170].

The primary treatment approach in IBD is usually drug therapy. Patients can be treated with a variety of drugs, including 5-ASAs (e.g. mesalazine), steroids (e.g. prednisolone) and immunosuppressants (e.g. azathioprine). In addition, patients with CD may also receive new biological drugs such as monoclonal antibodies (e.g. the anti-TNF-α antibody infliximab) when standard drug treatment fails[171]. Despite their general efficacy, such drugs can carry a significant burden. They are not only expensive but also side effects are common, with an incidence of 28 % for immunosuppressants, rising to 50 % for steroids[172]. In addition, approximately 30 % of patients with UC and 50 % of patients with CD will require surgery at some point in their life[172]. In the case of UC, a colectomy and formation of an ileo-anal pouch may be curative. However, following this procedure, a minority of patients will experience relapsing, remitting pouch inflammation, described as pouchitis.

Nutritional approaches to treating IBD have been investigated. In clinical trials, enteral nutrition has been shown to induce remission in 60–85 % of patients with CD, however, it remains less effective than steroids[173] and patients report problems with palatability and abstinence from food[174]. In view of these findings, safe and effective interventions that induce and maintain remission in IBD with a low incidence of side effects are urgently needed.

In order to identify potential therapeutic targets for IBD, examination of its pathogenesis is required. Although the precise mechanisms are not yet known, it appears that IBD results from a heightened mucosal immune response to the GI microbiota in genetically susceptible individuals.

The immunological processes underlying IBD involve alterations in the balance of proinflammatory and immunoregulatory cytokines within the mucosal immune system. Much of the inflammation is mediated via cytokines released by activated Th1/Th17 lymphocytes. In addition, TNF (TNF)-α has been shown to play a key role, exerting its effects via stimulation of other proinflammatory cytokines such as IL (IL)-1, IL-6 and IFN-γ. Each of these proinflammatory cytokines have been shown to be elevated during active IBD[175], and biological therapies such as anti-TNF-α-antibodies directly target this immunological cascade. Other proinflammatory cytokines include IL-12 and IL-18, both of which are involved in IFNγ production. In contrast, the immuno-regulatory response is mediated by cytokines such as IL-10, which down-regulates IFNγ production[176]. Furthermore, some animal studies have indicated immunoregulatory roles for IL-4 and transforming growth factor (TGF)-β in IBD[177].

There is convincing evidence that the inflammation observed in IBD is driven by the GI microbiota. For example, it has been shown that animal models of IBD do not develop inflammation when reared in germ-free conditions, whereas they subsequently develop inflammation once transferred to non-sterile conditions or are artificially colonised with bacteria[178]. Similar observations have been described in human subjects with IBD. In patients with colonic CD, formation of an ileostomy, which diverts the faecal stream away from the site of inflammation, results in disease remission in 65 % of patients, while reversal of this procedure results in disease relapse in 60 %, implying that the content of the faecal stream is in part responsible for driving inflammation[179]. Patients with active IBD also have elevated GI permeability, thereby increasing the exposure of the mucosal immune system to the resident microbiota[180]. An underlying pathogenic mechanism linking CD and the GI microbiota was realised when it was found that mutations in the caspase-activating recruitment domain 15 (CARD15) gene, involved in bacterial recognition, were found to result in a 38-fold increase in risk for CD[181]. Interestingly, this mutation does not result in a higher risk of UC and further genome wide association studies have identified numerous other mutations associated with increased risk of either UC or CD but that are unrelated to bacterial recognition or sensing[182].

British Journal of Nutrition

Therefore, there are clearly genetic and environmental triggers related to the onset of IBD other than those involving the GI microbiota.

Despite the evidence that the GI microbiota is necessary to drive the inflammation in IBD, some bacteria may indeed protect the mucosa from such inflammation. Studies in both animals models and patients with IBD have shown that some bacteria decrease abnormal GI permeability[183,184], thereby reducing exposure of the mucosal immune system to the GI microbiota. Meanwhile, some probiotics, in particular bifidobacteria, up-regulate immuno-regulatory IL-10 production by dendritic cells[185,186], the production of which is therapeutic in animal models of IBD[176]. In view of this, studies have shown some success of both antibiotics and probiotics in the management of IBD and these have been extensively reviewed elsewhere[187,188].

Components of the GI microbiota therefore drive proinflammatory and/or immuno-regulatory cytokine production during IBD. Interestingly, numerous studies demonstrate alterations in the GI microbiota of patients. Such studies are varied, utilising a wide variety of microbiological techniques (e.g. traditional culture and molecular microbiology) in different samples (i.e. faeces, inflamed mucosa, non-inflamed mucosa). Comparisons have been made between UC and/or CD and/or healthy controls, and these vary as to whether patients were in relapse or remission. Consequently, studies of the GI microbiota in IBD are too varied to review in detail here. However, some conclusions can be drawn regarding the alterations in GI microbiota in IBD that suggest that ingredients showing a prebiotic effect may be of potential benefit in its treatment or maintenance.

In general, studies adopt two different approaches to investigating the microbiota in IBD. Some investigate differences in concentration, proportion or diversity of microbial communities (i.e. dysbiosis theory), whereas others investigate the presence or absence of selected species (i.e. single strain theory). For example, patients with inactive CD have been shown to have lower proportions of faecal bifidobacteria[189,190], whereas both patients with active UC or active CD have lower faecal bifidobacteria, *C. coccoides* and *C. leptum* compared with healthy controls[190]. Lower concentrations of bifidobacteria[191,192] and higher concentrations of bacteroides[193] have also been found in the mucosa of both patients with UC or CD. Meanwhile, another study has shown that some patients with CD or UC have lower numbers of mucosal Firmicutes and Bacteroidetes[194]. Increased presence of *E. coli* has been demonstrated in patients with UC or CD[195,196] and more recently, lower concentrations of *F. prausnitzii* were found in the faeces of patients with CD or UC compared with controls[190]. This is important as *F. prausnitzii* is immuno-regulatory and higher mucosal concentrations are associated with longer maintenance following surgically induced remission of CD[197].

In view of the role of the certain components of the GI microbiota in driving intestinal inflammation, combined with the apparent dysbiosis in IBD, the use of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect as an approach to modifying the microbiota in order to induce or maintain remission in IBD has been investigated.

The prebiotic concept is defined as the selective stimulation of growth and/or activity of one or a limited number of microbial genera, species or strains in the gut microbiota that confers health benefits to the host. Ingredients showing a prebiotic effect have been shown to increase faecal and mucosal bifidobacteria in healthy subjects[198,199]. This is relevant because bifidobacteria are present in lower concentrations in the faeces and mucosa of patients with IBD[190,192], while *in vitro* experiments have shown that some species of bifidobacteria stimulate IL-10 production, potentially via interaction with TLR on lamina propria dendritic cells[185]. In addition, prebiotic ITF have recently been shown to increase concentrations of *F. prausnitzii* in healthy subjects[200], although this has not yet been confirmed in patients with IBD. Furthermore, SCFA, produced through the fermentation of such ingredients, modulate inflammation, with cell-culture studies showing that butyrate inhibits pro-inflammatory IL-2 and IFNγ production and acetate and propionate increases immuno-regulatory IL-10 production[95]. In addition, mucin production is stimulated by both propionate and butyrate[201]. Mucins (such as MUC2) are required for the maintenance of the mucous layer that enables epithelial protection and which may be lower in patients with IBD[202].

Numerous experiments have been conducted to investigate the impact of these ingredients on chronic intestinal inflammation in animal models of IBD, and these have been reviewed elsewhere[203]. However, at the current time, their use among patients with IBD remains relatively low[204]. However, over the last decade, there has been an increase in the number of clinical trials investigating their use in inducing or maintaining remission in IBD (Table 11).

Prebiotic effects in pouchitis. Two studies have been identified that investigate the use of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in patients with pouchitis. The first, published in abstract form only, involved ten patients with active pouchitis who were treated with a synbiotic combination of *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG and ITF in an open label study in whom 'all patients experienced complete clinical and endoscopic remission'[205]. Unfortunately, further details of the outcomes are limited and the cause of any benefit, be it a placebo effect, the probiotic, a prebiotic effect or a combination, is unclear. In a larger, controlled study, twenty patients with inactive pouchitis were randomised to consume 24 g/d ITF or placebo for 3 weeks in a crossover study[206]. There was a significant reduction in pouchitis disease activity index during the ITF intervention, despite nobody having active disease. In addition, there was a reduction in faecal *Bacteroides fragilis* and an increase in butyrate. Interestingly, bifidobacteria remained unchanged, perhaps due to the absence of a colon preventing the complete fermentation and prebiotic effects of the ITF to be realised. Clearly, larger parallel controlled trials in both active and inactive pouchitis are warranted.

Prebiotic effects in ulcerative colitis. Two trials have used ingredients showing a prebiotic effect to investigate their efficacy in the management of UC. The first was a pilot study of eighteen patients with active UC, who were randomised to receive either a synbiotic (6 g/d of ITF and *Bifidobacterium longum*) or a placebo. Only fourteen completed the study (eight intervention and six control) and there was no difference in clinical scores between the intervention and control groups, but there was a lower degree of inflammation[158]. In addition, there was an increase in

Table 11. Clinical trials on the prebiotic effect in inflammatory bowel disease

Subjects	Trial design*	Groups	*N**	Duration	Key findings	Reference
Pouchitis (active)	Open label	(a) FOS (1 tablet/d) *L. rhamnosus GG* (1 tablet/d)	(a) 10	–	'Clinical and endoscopic remission'	Friedman *et al.*[205]
Pouchitis (remission)	DB-RCT, CO	(a) Inulin (24 g/d) contained in drink (b) Placebo drink	(a/b) 20	3 weeks	Compared with baseline, the prebiotic: Reduced pouchitis activity Reduced *B. fragilis* Had no effect on bifidobacteria Increased faecal butyrate	Welters *et al.*[206]
UC (active)	DB-RCT	(a) Oligofructose/inulin (12 g/d) *B. longum* (4×10^{11} cells/d) (b) Maltodextrose placebo (12 g/d)	(a) 9 (b) 9	1 month	Compared with placebo, the synbiotic: Reduced sigmoidoscopy score Compared to baseline, the synbiotic: Increased mucosal bifidobacteria Reduced human beta defensin mRNA Reduced TNF-α, IL-1α Reduced mucosal inflammation	Furrie *et al.*[158]
UC (active)	DB-RCT	(a) Oligofructose/inulin (12 g/d) (b) Maltodextrose placebo (12 g/d) Both groups started Mesalazine 3 g/d	(a) 10 (b) 9	2 weeks	Compared with placebo, the prebiotic: Did not result in greater reduction in disease activity Reduced faecal calprotectin Compared to baseline, the prebiotic: Reduced disease activity Reduced dyspepsia	Casellas *et al.*[159]
CD, paediatric (active)	Open label	(a) Oligofructose/inulin (mean 8·4 g/d) Enteral nutrition (semi-elemental)	(a) 10	6 weeks	Compared with baseline, the prebiotic enteral formula: Reduced disease activity Reduced inflammation (ESR, leucocytes scan) Increased quality of life	Hussey *et al.*[210]
CD (active)	Open label	(a) Oligofructose/inulin (15 g/d)	(a) 10	3 weeks	Compared with baseline, the prebiotic: Reduced disease activity Increased faecal bifidobacteria Did not affect mucosal bifidobacteria Increased dendritic cell IL-10 Increased dendritic cell TLR-2 and TLR-4 expression	Lindsay *et al.*[111]
CD (remission)	DB-RCT	(a) Synbiotic 2000 (inulin, resistant starch, pectin, β-glucans, 2·5 g each, *P. pentoseceus, L. raffinolactis, L. paracasei, L. plantarum*) (b) Placebo	(a) 20 (b) 10	24 months	Compared with placebo, the synbiotic: Did not influence relapse rates	Chermesh *et al.*[212]
CD (active)	DB-RCT	(a) Oligofructose/inulin (15 g/d) (b) Maltodextrose placebo (15 g/d)	(a) 54 (b) 49	4 weeks	Compared with placebo, the prebiotic: Did not lower disease activity Did not result in greater reduction in disease activity Did not result in greater numbers in remission	Benjamin *et al.*[211]

FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; DB-RCT, double-blind randomised controlled trial; CO, crossover; UC, ulcerative colitis; CD, Crohn's disease; ESR, erythrocyte sedimentation rate; TLR-2, toll-like receptor 2.
* Numbers recruited to each group.

mucosal bifidobacteria and decrease in TNF-α, IL-1α and antimicrobial human β-defensin peptides in the synbiotic group. Although this data suggest promising effects, the use of a synbiotic combination makes it difficult to ascertain the specific effects of the prebiotic on clinical outcome.

In another pilot study in active UC, nineteen patients were randomised to receive either an ingredient showing a prebiotic effect (12 g/d of ITF) or a placebo, in conjunction with 3 g/d mesalazine for 2 weeks[159]. Only fifteen patients completed the study (seven intervention and eight control) and although there was a reduction in disease activity, this occurred in both groups, potentially due to them both starting concomitant drug therapy. However, compared with the placebo, the intervention group had significantly lower concentrations of the inflammatory marker faecal calprotectin. This trial provides the first indicator that a prebiotic alone may be of benefit in treating active UC. Its major limitations include low numbers in each group, that increase the chance of type 2 errors, and a short treatment duration that may be insufficient to allow a prebiotic effect to translate into a clinical effect[159].

In addition to these, a number of studies in UC have investigated the use of compounds that although described as prebiotic are not generally considered to be so. Trials of these fibre compounds have therefore not been included in Table 11. For example, a series of studies have shown that germinated barley foodstuff increases remission rates when used to treat active UC[207] and results in longer remission when used in maintenance of UC[208]. More recently a trial of psyllium or the probiotic *B. longum* did not result in a significant improvement in quality of life or reduction in serum C-reactive protein, whereas when used together they did[209].

There remains little data on the clinical, microbiological and immunological effects of prebiotics specifically in maintaining remission in UC.

Prebiotic effects in Crohn's disease. In a small, open-label study a semi-elemental enteral formula containing ingredients showing a prebiotic effect (4 g/l of ITF) was fed via nasogastric tube as a sole source of nutrition for 6 weeks to ten children with active CD[210]. There was a reduction in disease activity alongside improvements in markers of inflammation including reduced erythrocyte sedimentation rate and improved white cell scans. In light of the evidence for the efficacy of enteral nutrition in inducing remission in active CD[173], the present study design does not allow the clinical consequences of the prebiotic effect to be separated from those of the enteral nutrition.

A small open label study of ingredients ITF (15 g/d) in patients with active CD demonstrated a significant reduction in disease activity after 3 weeks, with four out of ten patients entering disease remission[111]. In addition, faecal, but not mucosal, bifidobacteria increased and there was an increase in dendritic cell IL-10 production together with TLR-2 and TLR-4 expression. Clearly caution is required in interpreting and applying the results of this small uncontrolled trial.

The same group have recently presented the clinical data from a large double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial of ITF (15 g/d) in 103 patients with active CD[211]. Analysed on an intention-to-treat basis, there were no significant differences in disease activity or the numbers entering disease remission between groups. However, as the data have only been presented as a conference abstract, there is currently limited clinical data and no microbiological and immunological data published.

Finally, one study has investigated the effect of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on preventing relapse in thirty patients following surgically induced remission of CD. The present study supplemented a synbiotic *(Pediacoccus pentoseceus, Lactobacillus raffinolactis, L. paracasei susp paracasei 19, Lactobacillus plantarum*, 2·5 g β-glucans, 2·5 g ITF, 2·5 g pectin, 2·5 g resistant starch) or a placebo for 24 months[212]. In view of the long follow-up period, only nine patients completed the study (nine intervention and two control) and there were no differences in relapse rates between groups. It is noteworthy that the amount of the used ingredient contained within the synbiotic was relatively low.

Limitations of existing studies on prebiotic effects in inflammatory bowel disease. Of the identified clinical trials of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in IBD, numerous limitations in their reporting and trial design have been highlighted. First, a number have only been published as conference abstracts[205,210,211], therefore impeding detailed data extraction. Many of the studies used different compounds, some with unconfirmed prebiotic properties, and in different doses. In addition, many of the studies use a synbiotic combination, making it unclear whether the probiotic, the prebiotic or the combination is effective. The majority of the studies have poor study design, with numerous small pilot studies, some of which do not have control groups. Where control groups are used they do not always receive a placebo, making subjective outcomes such as patient reports of disease activity or quality of life difficult to interpret. This is important in view of the high placebo rates reported in clinical trials of IBD[213,214]. Furthermore, of the trials in CD none have analysed the influence of disease location, which may be important as ingredients showing a prebiotic effect may have different efficacy in colonic and ileal disease, due to the site of fermentation and augmentation of bacterial growth.

Key points. IBD results from a heightened mucosal immune response to the GI microbiota in genetically susceptible individuals.

Patients with IBD have a GI dysbiosis characterised by, among other things, lower concentrations of luminal and mucosal bifidobacteria, suggesting potential for prebiotic intervention. Prebiotic effects have potential benefits in IBD by increasing luminal and mucosal bifidobacteria and SCFA concentrations and stimulating immuno-regulatory cytokine production.

Numerous small pilot studies have been conducted in pouchitis, UC and CD indicating potential benefit in treating active disease.

Although some larger trials have been conducted, they are generally limited in study design, interpretation and analysis, therefore definitive conclusions regarding the clinical efficacy of the prebiotic effect in IBD are not yet possible. One large RCT has demonstrated no clinical benefit of treating active CD with ingredients showing a prebiotic effect.

So far, results are substance and study specific, but do not warrant a conclusion for prebiotic effects in general.

None of the trials conducted thus far have reported concerns regarding the safety of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in patients with IBD, and so their use at the doses used would appear safe.

Recommendations. Further large, multi-centre randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in IBD are required. There is a particular lack of research on maintenance of remission of IBD and for the treatment colonic IBD (either UC or colonic CD).

Inter-disciplinary research is required that addresses clinical, as well as mechanistic, outcomes that are validated and relevant to this patient population.

In vivo and *in vitro* research is also required to further understand the mechanisms by which ingredients showing a prebiotic effect may achieve their potential benefit.

Health care professionals should keep informed of the latest evidence relating prebiotic effect in IBD. Not only is this an emerging area of research, with clinical trials currently underway, but it is also an area of interest to patients.

Prebiotic effects and colon cancer

Colon carcinogenesis – the role of diet and gut microbiota. Evidence suggests that diet plays an important role in the aetiology of colorectal cancer, However, identifying conclusively which constituents (e.g. vegetables, meat, fibre, fat and micronutrients) exert an effect on risk has been more problematic due to inconsistent data. The 2007 World Cancer Research Fund report[215] concluded that the epidemiological evidence was convincing or probable for associations between overweight and obesity (in particular waist circumference), processed meat, alcohol and increased risk of colorectal cancer. Fibre, garlic, milk and Ca are associated with decreased risk. There are no published epidemiological studies on ingredients showing a prebiotic effect and cancer risk.

Evidence from a wide range of sources supports the view that the colonic microbiota is involved in the aetiology of cancer[216] and that bacterial metabolism of unabsorbed dietary residues and endogenous secretions is the origin of many of the genotoxic and tumour-promoting agents found in faeces[217].

Prebiotic effects and colorectal cancer. It follows from the above that modification of the gut microbiota may interfere with the process of carcinogenesis, and this opens up the possibility for dietary modification of colon cancer risk. Prebiotic modulation of the microbiota by increasing numbers of lactobacilli and/or bifidobacteria in the colon has been a particular focus of attention in this regard. Evidence that such an effect can influence carcinogenesis is derived from a variety of sources:

(1) Effects on bacterial enzyme activities.
(2) Antigenotoxic effects *in vivo*.
(3) Effects on pre-cancerous lesions in laboratory animals.
(4) Effects on tumour incidence in laboratory animals.
(5) Epidemiological and experimental studies in human subjects.

Prebiotic protective effects and bacterial activities

Prebiotic effects and secondary bacterial enzyme activities. The ability of the colonic microbiota to generate a wide variety of mutagens, carcinogens and tumour promoters including *N*-nitrosocompounds, secondary bile acids, ammonia, phenols and cresols from dietary and endogenously produced precursors is well documented[216,218]. In addition, the bacterial enzyme β-glucuronidase is involved in the release in the colon from their conjugated form of a number of dietary carcinogens, including polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons.

Ingredients showing a prebiotic effect should not stimulate bacteria capable for such metabolism. During *in vivo* experiments, this should result in an overall decrease in toxic substances.

In general, species of *Bifidobacterium* and *Lactobacillus* have low activities of enzymes involved in carcinogen formation and metabolism by comparison to other major anaerobes in the gut such as bacteroides, eubacteria and clostridia[219]. This suggests that increasing the proportion of these two lactic acid bacteria in the gut could modify, beneficially, the levels of xenobiotic-metabolising enzymes. It may lead to decrease in certain bacterial enzymes purported to be involved in the synthesis or activation of carcinogens, genotoxins and tumour promoters. Such manipulations have been suggested to be responsible for decreased levels or preneoplastic lesions or tumours in animal models[220,221] and suggest a reduction in the damaging load.

In general, studies in laboratory animals have shown that ITF and galactans decrease caecal enzyme activities[222,223]. However, human studies have yielded inconsistent or negative results on such enzyme activities or on production of toxic bacterial metabolites such as ammonia and phenols[65,224,225].

Prebiotic and synbiotic effects on pre-cancerous lesions in laboratory animals. Aberrant crypts (AC) are putative pre-neoplastic lesions seen in the colon of carcinogen-treated rodents. In many cases, a focus of two or more crypts is seen and is termed an aberrant crypt focus (ACF). AC are induced in colonic mucosa of rats and mice by treatment with various colon carcinogens such as azoxymethane (AOM) and dimethylhydrazine (DMH)[226].

Ingredients showing a prebiotic effect alone appear to give inconsistent results on carcinogen-induced ACF which may be partly a consequence of differences in carcinogen and treatment regimes used. For example, Rao *et al.*[227] reported that ITF (10 % in diet) had no significant effect on total ACF in colon, or their multiplicity, in F344 rats, although curiously a significant decrease in ACF/cm^2 of colon was reported. A study by Gallaher *et al.*[228] on *Bifidobacterium* spp and FOS (2 % in diet) gave inconsistent results with only one out of three experiments showing a decrease in DMH-induced ACF. In contrast, Verghese *et al.*[229] reported a dose-dependent decrease in the incidence of ACF and total crypts ($P<0{\cdot}01$) after ITF supplementation (0, 2·5, 5 and 10 g/100 g diets) in AOM-challenged rats.

The effects of prebiotics on ACF may be dependent on the chain length of the ITF, since a number of studies report more potent inhibition by longer than by shorter chains[230–232]. For example, Buddington *et al.*[231] reported that inulin (10 % in diet), but not oligofructose fed mice, had significantly lower ACF numbers than the controls.

Some studies have found that ITF have differential effects on ACF and tumours. For example, Jacobsen *et al.*[233] reported that oligofructose or long-chain inulin (15 % in diet) increased the number of ACF but significantly reduced the tumour incidence. A study by Caderni *et al.*[234] showed similar results when rats were fed the synbiotic-containing

ITF alongside *Lactobacillus GG*, *L. delbrueckii* subsp. Rhamnosus and *Bifidobacterium lactis* Bb12. Supplementation caused increased ACF multiplicity after 16 weeks, however, significantly reduced tumour incidence following 32 weeks in AOM-challenged rats.

There are limited studies on ingredients showing a prebiotic effect other than ITF in this area. Challa *et al.*[235] demonstrated a small reduction (22 %) in total ACF in AOM-treated F344 rats when the synthetic, non-digestible disaccharide lactulose was incorporated in the diet at 2 %. Hsu *et al.*[236] compared the influence ITF (60 g/kg) and xylo-oligosaccharides supplementation on DMH-induced AC in ratsreporting a decrease in the mean number of multicrypt clusters of AC by 56 and 81 %, respectively ($P<0{\cdot}05$). Wijnands *et al.*[237] compared AOM-induced ACF in F344 rats fed diets containing low or high GOS (5 *v.* 20 % w/w of a GOS syrup comprising 38 % GOS). There were no significant differences between the dietary groups in total ACF after 7 or 13 weeks of treatment although there was a significant decrease in ACF multiplicity in the high GOS fed group (4·4 *v.* 3·07; $P<0{\cdot}5$).

Both Challa *et al.*[235] and Rowland *et al.*[221] studied the effect of combined treatment of probiotic and prebiotic on ACF numbers. The combination of *B. longum* and lactulose resulted in a 48 % inhibition of colonic ACF, which was significantly greater than that achieved by either *B. longum* or lactulose alone[235]. Similarly Rowland *et al.*[221] reported a decrease in total ACF of 74 % in rats given *B. longum* + ITF (by comparison to 29 and 21 % reduction achieved by *B. longum* or ITF alone). Importantly, the combined administration of probiotic and prebiotic reduced large ACF by 59 %, whereas the individual treatments had no effect. Nakanishi *et al.*[238] showed that supplementation with *C. butyricum* (CB) in AOM-challenged rats had no significant effect on ACF occurrence. However, CB supplemented alongside high amylose maize starch (a poorly digestible carbohydrate) decreased the number of ACF significantly ($P<0{\cdot}05$) indicating a degree of synbiotic activity.

Prebiotic effects and colon tumour incidence in laboratory animals. There are fewer reports on prebiotic and synbiotics than on probiotics in terms of tumour incidence but overall the studies indicate protective effects. Jacobsen *et al.*[233] compared the incidence of tumours in AOM-challenged rats following consumption of ITF (15 % diet w/w). Significantly less rats developed colon tumours in the treated group ($P<0{\cdot}05$) compared to the control diet. The total number of tumours developed per rat was significantly reduced following both oligofructose ($P<0{\cdot}01$) and inulin ($P<0{\cdot}05$) supplementation. However, supplementation had no effect on the malignancy of the tumours. Wijnands *et al.*[239] compared the effect of cellulose and GOS syrup on induction of DMH-induced colorectal tumours in Wistar rats consuming basal diets containing low-, medium- or high-fat content. The cellulose diets contained 4·5–5·2 % w/w (low cellulose) or 22·6–24·5 % (high cellulose) and the GOS syrup diets 8·3–9·5 % (low GOS) or 26·3–28·7 % (high GOS). The GOS syrup used comprises 38 % GOS with additional lactose, glucose and galactose, thus the high GOS diets contained about 10·5 % dry weight GOS. The cellulose content of the diet had no effect on total tumours, but high cellulose increased adenomas and significantly decreased carcinomas. There were no significant effects of high GOS diets on tumour incidence. Multiplicity of tumours (i.e. number per tumour-bearing animal) both adenoma and carcinoma, was significantly decreased in the high-GOS-fed group.

Femia *et al.*[240] investigated the protective effects of prebiotic (ITF), probiotic (*B. lactis* Bb12 and *L. rhamnosus* GG, (5×10^8 CFU/g diet) or synbiotic combination of the two against AOM-induced colon tumours in rats. Prebiotic-fed groups (prebiotic and synbiotic groups) resulted in lower adenoma ($P<0{\cdot}001$) and adenocarcinoma ($P<0{\cdot}05$) incidence than in the rats not given prebiotic (probiotic and control). Interestingly, in the groups treated with probiotics (probiotic and synbiotic groups) the proportion of cancers relative to the total number of tumours was significantly lower ($P=0{\cdot}04$) (nine cancers out of eighty-four tumours (11 %)) than in the control and prebiotic groups (nineteen cancers out of eighty-three tumours (23 %)), suggesting a protective effect of probiotics, but not ingredients showing a prebiotic effect, on development of malignant tumours.

In the transgenic Min mice model, the mice develop spontaneous adenomas throughout the small intestine and colon within a few weeks. Results from studies on ITF in this model have been conflicting, with both inhibitory and stimulatory effects on tumours reported. In one study, Min mice were fed various diets containing wheat bran, resistant starch or oligofructose (5·8 % in diet) for 6 weeks. Tumour numbers remained unchanged from the control (low (2 %) fibre diet) in the mice fed either wheat bran or resistant starch, but a significant reduction in colon tumours was observed in rats receiving the diet supplemented with oligofructose. Furthermore, four out of the ten oligofructose fed animals were totally free of colon tumours[241]. These results contrast with those of Mutanen *et al.*[242] using the same model. In the first of their studies, Min mice fed a purified high-fat diet (40 % energy) with 2·5 % ITF showed NS increases in adenomas in the small and large intestines compared with the control animals fed the high-fat, fibre-free diet alone. A subsequent study[243] using a higher ITF dose (10 %) confirmed these results with increases, again NS, being seen in the number of adenomas in the small intestine and colon and significant increases in tumours in the distal small intestine after 9 weeks of treatment. Interestingly, although the adenoma size in the small intestine was significantly increased in the inulin-fed mice, in the colon the size was reduced from 3·72 to 2·54 mm (non significant). In some articles, it has been suggested that the reasons for the discrepancies in the Min mouse studies are due to major differences in the basal diet fed: high-fat, high glucose diet in the Mutanen studies and high-starch diet in the studies of Pierre *et al.*[78,244].

Taper & Roberfroid[245] investigated the effects in mice of ITF or pectin (15 % in the diet) on the growth of intramuscularly transplanted mouse tumours, belonging to two tumour lines – TLT (a mammary tumour) and EMT6 (a liver tumour). The growth of both tumour lines was significantly inhibited by supplementing the diet with non-digestible carbohydrates. In subsequent studies, the same authors demonstrated that ITF (15 % in diet) reduced the incidence of mammary tumours induced in Sprague–Dawley rats by methylnitrosourea and decreased the incidence of lung metastases of a malignant tumour implanted intramuscularly in mice[246].

Prebiotic effects in human intervention studies. For human intervention trials, cancer is an impractical end point in

terms of numbers of subjects, cost, study duration and ethical considerations. An alternative strategy employed in recent studies is to use early or intermediate biomarkers of cancer such as DNA damage and cell proliferation in colonic mucosa and genotoxic activity of faecal extracts ('faecal water')[247].

In a larger scale, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, patients with resected polyps (*n* 37) or colon cancer (*n* 43) were given a synbiotic food supplement composed of ITF and the probiotics *L. rhamnosus* GG and *B. lactis* Bb12 for 12 weeks[248]. The effect of synbiotic consumption on a battery of intermediate biomarkers for colon cancer was examined. The intervention significantly reduced colorectal proliferation as assessed by *in vitro* (3H) thymidine incorporation and autoradiography in colorectal biopsy samples. Given the correlation between colorectal proliferativeactivity and colon cancer risk, these results suggest that synbiotics might be beneficial for patients with an increased risk of colon cancer. In addition, in the polyp patients, the synbiotic intervention was associated with a significant improvement in barrier function as assessed by *trans*-epithelial resistance of Caco-2 cell monolayers after exposure to faecal water samples. This anti-promotion effect may reflect changes in the balance of SCFA and secondary bile acids (deoxycholic acid and lithocholic acid) in the samples because these gut microbial metabolites have *trans*-epithelial resistance, beneficially and adversely respectively, in this system. Genotoxicity assays of colonic biopsies and faecal water indicated a decreased exposure to genotoxins in the polyp patients at the end of the intervention period.

Thus, several colorectal cancer biomarkers were altered favourably by the intervention and the results show consistency with animal studies conducted in parallel[240].

Also of interest was the observation that the polyp patients and cancer patients appeared to respond differently to the synbiotic, as evidenced by the different effects observed on each biomarker. This may have been due to the fact that the intestinal microbiota was more refractory to changes induced by the synbiotic in the cancer patients than in the polyp patients.

Mechanisms of anticarcinogenicity and antigenotoxicity

Prebiotic effects and in vivo *prevention of genotoxicity*. More direct evidence for protective properties of probiotics and ingredients showing a prebiotic effect has been obtained by assessing the ability to prevent DNA damage and mutations (which are considered to be early events in the process of carcinogenesis) in cell cultures or in animals.

Using the technique of single-cell microgel electrophoresis (Comet assay), the prebiotic effect of lactulose on DNA damage in the colonic mucosa has been evaluated. Rats that were fed a diet containing 3 % lactulose and given DMH, exhibited less DNA damage in colon cells than similarly treated animals fed a sucrose diet. In the latter animals, the percentage of cells with severe DNA damage comprises 33 % of the total compared with only 12·6 % in the lactulose-fed rats[249].

Klinder *et al.*[250] also showed that the prebiotic effect of ITF and probiotic supplementation (8 months) caused a reduction in the genotoxicity of faecal and caecal samples obtained from AOM-treated rats.

Rafter *et al.*[248] investigated the influence of 12 weeks synbiotic supplementation (*L. rhamnosus* GG (LGG) + *B. lactis* Bb12 + ITFmix) on selected cancer biomarkers in patients with resected colonic polyps or cancer. Synbiotic supplementation resulted in significant reductions in DNA damage in the colonic mucosa of polyp patients. The results provide evidence that both supplementation of lactic acid bacteria and prebiotic effects may be protective against the early stages of colon cancer.

Another important aspect to be considered in relation to the anti-toxic potential associated with a prebiotic effect is the formation of reducing equivalents, such as glutathione. Food-borne carcinogens such as heterocyclic amines and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are often conjugated with glutathione and thus inactivated. The enzyme involved, glutathione transferase, is found in the liver and in other tissues including the gut. Challa *et al.*[235] showed in a study of the effect of a synbiotic (*B. longum* and lactulose) on AOM-induced AC foci (ACF) in the rat colon that glutathione transferase in the colonic mucosa was inversely related to the ACF numbers and higher with the synbiotic intervention Such an effect would be effective against a wide range of oxidative damage.

Effects on bacterial enzymes and metabolite production. As described in section 'Microbiota of the gastro-intestinal tract' of the present paper, the increase in concentration of lactic acid bacteria in the gut as a consequence of consumption of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect leads to decreases in certain bacterial enzymes purported to be involved in synthesis or activation of carcinogens, genotoxins and tumour promoters. This would appear to be due to the low-specific activity of these enzymes in lactic acid bacteria[219]. Such changes in enzyme activity or metabolite concentration have been suggested to be responsible for the decreased level of preneoplastic lesions or tumours seen in carcinogen-treated rats given probiotics and prebiotics[220,221]. Although a causal link has not been demonstrated, this remains a plausible hypothesis.

Production of anti-cancer metabolites. Luminal SCFA, in particular butyrate, are potential anti-carcinogenic agents within the gut. Butyrate is the preferred energy source of colonocytes and has been implicated in the control of the machinery regulating apoptosis and cellular differentiation. Perrin *et al.*[251] studied the effect of different forms of dietary fibre, a starch-free wheat bran, a type three-resistant starch and ITF on the prevention of ACF in rats. Their hypothesis was that only fibres capable of releasing butyrate *in vitro* would be capable of preventing colon cancer. The resistant starch diet and the ITF diet both produced large quantities of butyrate and inhibited ACF formation, in contrast to the wheat bran diet that neither generated large amounts of butyrate nor protected against ACF formation.

Stimulation of protective enzymes. Many of the food-borne carcinogens such as heterocyclic amines and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons are known to be conjugated to glutathione, which appears to result in inactivation. The enzyme involved, glutathione transferase, is found in the liver and in other tissues including the gut. Challa *et al.*[235] investigated the effect of *B. longum* and lactulose on AOM-induced ACF in the colon and showed that the activity of glutathione transferase in the colonic mucosa was inversely related to

the ACF numbers. Such a mechanism of protection would be effective against a wide range of dietary carcinogens.

Apoptotic effects. The control of gene expression, cell growth, proliferation and cell death in multi-cellular organisms is dependent upon the complex array of signals received and transmitted by individual cells. Apoptosis or programmed cell death is one of the primary mechanisms by which multicellular organisms control normal development and prevent aberrant cell growth. Up-regulation of apoptosis has received some attention recently as a potential mechanism of action of probiotics and ingredients showing a prebiotic effect.

Hughes & Rowland[252] fed three groups of rats with one of the three diets: basal, basal with oligofructose (5 % w/w) or basal with long-chain inulin (5 % w/w), for 3 weeks. All the animals were then dosed with 1,2-DMH and sacrified 24 h later. The mean number of apoptotic cells per crypt was significantly higher in the colon of rats fed oligofructose ($P=0{\cdot}049$) and long-chain inulin ($P=0{\cdot}017$) as compared with those fed the basal diet alone. This suggests that such ingredients exert protective effects at an early stage in the onset of cancer, as the supplements were effective soon after the carcinogen insult. Comparison of the apoptotic indices between the two oligosaccharide diets showed no significant difference even though the mean apoptotic index was higher in animals fed long-chain inulin.

Effects on tight junctions. Other studies have looked at cellular and physiological events associated with tumour promotion in the colon. For example, one feature of colonic tumour promotion is a decrease the in epithelial barrier integrity.

Commane *et al.*[253] showed using an *in vitro* model of tight junction integrity (*trans*-epithelial resistance) that metabolic products (probably SCFA) derived from probiotics and ingredients showing a prebiotic effect fermentations were capable of improving tight junction integrity, suggesting that synbiotics may have anti-tumour-promoting activity.

Summary and conclusion

(1) Data from animal models as well as preliminary evidence in human study suggest reduction in the risk of colon cancer development associated with the prebiotic effects.
(2) Data from animal models, with endpoints such as DNA damage, AC foci and tumours in the colon, suggest that reduction in the risk of colon cancer development is associated with prebiotic effects.
(3) Limited animal studies also indicate that combinations of prebiotics and probiotics may be more effective than either agent alone.
(4) A prebiotics and probiotics study in human subjects using putative biomarkers of cancer risk showed improvements in some, including a reduction in DNA damage and cell proliferation in colon biopsies. Further studies are needed.
(5) A number of potential mechanisms for reduction in cancer risk by prebiotic effect, including changes in gut bacterial enzyme activities, up-regulation of apoptosis and induction of protective enzymes have been explored in animal models, but currently evidence for such effects in human subjects is lacking.

Prebiotic effects and mineral absorption

The main authors of this section are Dr Coxam, Dr Davicco, Dr Léotoing and Dr Wittrant.

Accumulating knowledge prompted the scientific community to consider compounds showing prebiotic effects as a source for putative innovative dietary health intervention for the improvement of mineral retention. This particular effect of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect is indeed especially challenging because, among the bone builders, Ca is critical in achieving optimal peak bone mass and modulating the rate of bone loss associated with ageing, and is the most likely to be inadequate in terms of dietary intakes. Consequently, this specific property of prebiotics has been investigated extensively because if the mineral is inadequate during growth, the full genetic programme for skeletal mass acquisition cannot be achieved. Then, if Ca intake is not enough to offset obligatory losses, acquired skeletal mass cannot be maintained, leading to osteoporosis, a major public health problem.

Moreover, biological properties of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect could extend far beyond, with potential improvement of other minerals bioavailability, including Mg, Fe or Zn.

Rationale behind the prebiotic effects on mineral absorption

Calcium. The most compelling data have demonstrated that ingredients showing a prebiotic effect lead to increased Ca absorption. As such ingredients are resistant to hydrolysis by small intestinal digestive enzymes, they reach the colon virtually intact, where they are selectively fermented by the microbiota[254,255]. This colonic fermentation produces SCFA and other organic acids that contribute to lower luminal pH in the large intestine which, in turn, elicits a modification of Ca speciation and hence solubility in the luminal phase so that its passive diffusion is improved[256–258]. SCFA are also likely to contribute directly to the enhancement of Ca absorption via a cation exchange mechanism (increased exchange of cellular H^+ for luminal Ca^{2+})[259].

Further, these ingredients may also modulate transcellular active Ca transport by increasing calbindin D9K expression in the cecum and colorectum (the intracellular carrier protein involved in the translocation of Ca to the basolateral membrane of mucosal epithelial cells)[260,261].

Another way to contribute to the enhanced mineral absorption is the trophic effect of prebiotics on the gut (cell growth and functional enhancement of the absorptive area)[262]. It has been suggested that this is mediated by an increased production of butyrate and/or certain polyamines[254]. Remesy *et al.*[256] have shown that inulin is able to stimulate ornithine decarboxylase, the rate-limiting enzyme for polyamine synthesis. Nevertheless, Scholz-Ahrens & Schrezenmeier[263] failed to show that polyamines mediate this effect.

In summary, ingredients showing a prebiotic effect help to increase Ca bioavailability by extending the site of mineral absorption (through the tight junctions between mucosal cells in the small intestine) towards the large intestine.

Other minerals. With regard to Mg, most of the potential of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on its absorption are similar to those described for Ca. They include increased Mg

British Journal of Nutrition

solubility and absorption due to reduced colonic pH[264]. Nevertheless, significant effects on Mg retention have been demonstrated in dogs, despite the lack of any change in faecal pH[265]. It is also possible that SCFA affect Mg absorption[266], butyrate being more efficient than propionate or acetate[267], probably via a cation exchange mechanism. Indeed, butyric acid is able to enhance the intestinal uptake by activation of an apical $Mg^{2+}/2H^{+}$ antiport through the provision of protons within the epithelial cell.

Fe and Zn balance can be improved by consumption of these ingredients however, animal studies have failed to show any significant effect on Cu bioavailability[268].

Summary of key studies

Table 12 provides the list of review papers dealing with the effect of prebiotics on mineral metabolism.

Animal study. Animal studies targeting the effect of prebiotics on Ca absorption are listed in the Tables 13 and 14. The points arising from these studies are the following:

(1) Different types of molecules have been studied, including ITF-$_{Dpav\ 3\text{-}4}$, ITF-$_{Dpav12}$, ITF-$_{Dpav25}$, ITF-$_{MIX}$, GOS, lactulose or resistant starch.
(2) Dietary supplementation with ITF enhances the uptake of Ca, improves bone mineral content (BMC) in growing rats and alleviates the reduction in bone mineral content and bone mineral density (BMD) which follows ovariectomy or gastrectomy in rats.

Clinical trials

In infants. The only available study targeting the prebiotic effect on mineral metabolism in infants was conducted in 6–12 months healthy formula-fed babies (Tables 15 and 16). Even though, ITF did not elicit any modulation of faecal SCFA concentration, a beneficial effect on both Fe and Mg absorption and retention was reported. No significant difference was observed for Ca, Cu or Zn[269].

In adolescents. As far as adolescents are concerned, in 1999, van den Heuvel *et al.*[270] demonstrated that a daily consumption of 15 g of ITF for 9 d stimulated fractional Ca absorption by 10 % in young boys (14–16 years). Later on, Griffin *et al.*[271] provided the evidence that modest intake of ITF_{MIX}, corresponding to 8 g/d, stimulated Ca absorption in sixty girls at or near menarche. The increase reached about 30 % after 3 weeks of consumption, when compared with oligofructose only or placebo intakes.

This effect was mostly observed in girls with lower Ca absorption status[272]. Moreover, when given for 36 d to adolescent girls (12–14 years), 10 g of ITF-$_{Dpav\ 3\text{-}4}$ were able to stimulate Mg absorption (18 %), without affecting Ca absorption, vitamin D or parathyroid hormone (PTH) serum concentration or urine concentration which are used as markers of bone resorption[273].

The longest and most compelling study is a 1-year intervention trial on pre-pubertal girls and boys (*n* 100) that found significantly increased Ca absorption in the group receiving ITF-$_{MIX}$ (8 g/d) after 8 weeks. The effect lasted throughout the intervention period resulting, after 1 year, in improved whole body bone mineral content and significantly increased BMD, compared with the controls[274]. This demonstrates a beneficial effect on long-term use of this particular mixture on Ca absorption and bone mineralisation in young adolescents[275]. A further study by Abrams *et al.*[276] showed that responders to the 'treatment' had greater Ca absorption and increased accretion of Ca to the skeleton, and thus concluded on the importance of such a strategy to enhance peak bone mass, as the extra absorbed Ca is deposited in bones.

In adults. It has been previously shown, using the metabolic balance methodology, that addition of up to 40 g/d of ITF and sugarbeet fibres to a normal mixed diet for 28 d improved Ca balance, without adverse effects on the retention of other mineral[277]. However, a study carried out by van den Heuvel *et al.*[278] in healthy young adults found no significant differences in mineral absorption, irrespective of the treatment (which consisted of a constant basal diet supplemented for 21 d with 15 g/d ITF, or GOS, or not supplemented) followed by a 24 h urine collection. It was hypothesised that a 24 h period of urine collection, used in the study, was too short to include the colonic component of Ca absorption and thus to make up a complete balance necessary to detect the effect of ITF. In a similar way, Teuri *et al.*[279] investigated a combination of 15 g of ITF and 210 mg of Ca added to 100 g of cheese given at breakfast to fifteen adult healthy women with an average age of 23 years old. The study failed to show any significant influence of the diet on blood ionised Ca or parathyroid concentration over the 8 h assessment period. Nevertheless, measuring serum parathyroid and ionised Ca do not provide direct information about Ca absorption, as do isotope techniques, and it has been suggested that the length of the trial was probably too short. Moreover, the addition of 1·1 g ITF-$_{Dpav3\text{-}4}$ or caseinophosphopeptides to Ca-enriched milks, a valuable source of well-absorbed Ca, did non-significantly increase Ca absorption in adults (25–36 years), independently of sex[280]. Finally, Abrams *et al.*[281] gave a supplementation containing 8 g of ITF-$_{MIX}$ for 8 weeks to thirteen young adults (average age of 23 years). Eight of the thirteen volunteers were classified as responders, based on their level of Ca absorption.

In postmenopausal women. Ducros *et al.*[282] carried out a clinical trial in postmenopausal women (age between 50 and 70 years with at least 2 years of menopause). The volunteers were provided with 10 g/d ITF-$_{Dpav3\text{-}4}$ or a placebo for 5 weeks using a crossover design. They demonstrated that consumption of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect was associated with increased Cu absorption, while no significant effect could be demonstrated on Zn or Se bioavailability.

In a similarly designed double-blind randomised, crossover design, post-menopausal women without hormone replacement therapy were given 10 g of ITF-$_{Dpav3\text{-}4}$ daily for 5 weeks. Mg absorption and status was determined using mass spectrometer analysis in faeces, urine and blood. Results showed that the ITF-$_{Dpav3\text{-}4}$-enriched diet increased Mg absorption by 12·3 %, compared to the placebo sucrose control group[283]. In the same experiment, Tahiri *et al.*[284] showed that over 5 weeks of a moderate daily dose (10 g) of ITF-$_{Dpav3\text{-}4}$ failed to modify intestinal Ca absorption in the early postmenopausal phase, while in the subgroup of late phase (women who had been going through menopause for more than 6 years), an increase in Ca absorption was observed.

NS British Journal of Nutrition

Table 12. Published reviews on the prebiotic effect on mineral metabolism

Model	Dietary fibres	Mineral	Main biological target	References
Human Rat	Fibres Phytic acid	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Mineral metabolism	Walker *et al.*[404]
Rat	Prebiotics (FOS, GOS, SOS)	Ca	Bioavailability	Roberfroid[405]
Human Rat	Oligosaccharides	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Ca absorption Ca absorption Methodology concerns	Coudray *et al.*[406]
Human	Prebiotics (oligofructose)	Ca	Bioavailability	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[278]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose, lactulose, resistant starch)	Ca, Mg, P, Fe, Zn	Mineral metabolism	Schaafsma *et al.* [407]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose) Synbiotics	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Bioavailability Functional foods	Roberfroid[255]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (fibre, inulin, oligofructose) Probiotics	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Bioavailability	Fairweather-tait *et al.*[408]
Human	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Mineral absorption	Carabin *et al.*[409]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose)	Ca	Ca absorption	Franck[410]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (FOS, GOS)	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Mineral absorption	Van Dokkum *et al.*[411]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, oligosaccharides)	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Mineral metabolism Ca metabolism Bone structure Mechanisms of action	Scholz-Ahrens *et al.*[294]
Human	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption	Roberfroid[412]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption Functional foods	Cashman[413]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca, Mg, P	Ca bioavailability	Kaur & Gupta[414]
Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin, TOS)	Ca, Mg	Mineral metabolism Bone structure Mechanisms of action	Scholz-Ahrens & Schrezenmeir[296]
Rat Human	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin, GOS)	Ca	Ca bioavailability Bone structure Mechanisms of action	Cashman[415]
Human	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose)	Ca	Ca bioavailability	Cashman[413]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose)	Mineral and trace elements	Mineral absorption, mechanisms of action	Bongers & Van den Heuvel[416]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose, resistant starch, lactulose)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone health, Mechanisms of action, Osteoporosis	Cashman[417]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose)	Ca	Ca absorption	Caers[418]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (FOS, GOS, oligofructose, inulin)	Mg	Mg absorption	Coudray *et al.*[419]
Human	Prebiotics (FOS, GOS, oligofructose, inulin)	Mg	Mg absorption	Coudray[420]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, ITF + oligofructose)	Ca	Ca balance, Bone health, Osteoporosis	Coxam[299]
Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca, Mg	Ca absorption, Mg retention, Bone health	Weaver[421]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone health, Osteoporosis	Abrams *et al.*[274]

Table 12. *Continued*

Model	Dietary fibres	Mineral	Main biological target	References
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone health	Franck[422]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone health, Osteoporosis	Bosscher *et al.*[423]
Human	Prebiotics (inulin, olgofructose)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone mineralization, Mechanisms of action	Cashman[275]
Human	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin) Phytoestrogens	Ca	Ca Bioavailability, Bone health, Phytoestrogens bioavailability	Coxam[424]
Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin) (impact of polymerization degree of prebiotics)	Ca, Mg, P, Fe, Zn	Mineral metabolism, Ca metabolism, Bone health, Mechanisms of action	Scholz-Ahrens & Schrezenmeir[425]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose) Probiotics (Bifidobacterium, lactobacillus) Synbiotics	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone health, Mechanisms of action	Scholz-Ahrens *et al.* [426]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca, Mg	Ca absorption, Bone health	Alexiou & Franck[427]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone health, Osteoporosis	Gibson & Delzenne[428]
Human	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose, GOS) and Probiotics (L casei, bifidobacteria, Lactobacillus, L reuteri, rhamnosus GG)	Ca	Ca absorption	De Vresse & Schrezenmeir[429]
Rat Dog	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose)	Ca	Ca absorption	Griffin & Abrams[430]
Human Rat	Prebiotics (inulin)	Ca	Ca absorption, Bone mineralization	Hawthorne & Abrams[431]
Human	Prebiotics (oligofructose, inulin)	Ca, Mg, Fe, Zn	Mineral metabolism, Bone remodelling, Mechanisms of action	Kelly[432]
Human	Prebiotics (inulin, oligofructose) Probiotics (Lactobacillus, Bifidobacterium)	Ca	Ca absorption, Osteoporosis	De Vrese[433]

FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; SOS, soy-oligosaccharides; TOS, transgalacto-oligosaccharides; ITF, inulin-type fructans.

Table 13. The prebiotic effects on bone metabolism in the rat

Substance	Amount (g/100 g diet length of treatment)	Bone effect	Study design/animals (*n*)/method analysis	References
GOS	20 d	↑ Tibia Ca content	OVX Wistar rats AAS	Chonan *et al.*[434]
FOS	5 60 d	↑ Femoral Ca content ↑ Bone volume	Growing Wistar rats (sixteen males) AAS Histomorphometric method	Takahara *et al.*[435]
Oligofructose or Inulin	10 13 weeks	Both ↑ femoral Ca content	Growing Fisher rats (thirty males, 4 weeks old) ICPMS	Richardson *et al.*[436]
Ca + Inulin	0·2 + 5 or 0·2 + 10 or 0·5 + 5 or 0·5 + 10 or 1 + 5 or 1 + 10 or From 4 to 22 weeks	↑ Whole body BMC ↑ Whole body BMD NS whole body bone area In each case (whatever Ca concentration and at all stage)	Growing Wistar rats (thirty-six males, 4 weeks old) DEXA	Roberfroid *et al.*[412]
Ca + FOS	0·5 + 2·5 or 0·5 + 5·0 or 0·5 + 10 or 1·0 + 50 or 16 weeks	Ns L1-L4 Ca content ↑ trabecular tibial thickness Ns L1-L4 Ca content ↑ trabecular tibial perimeter ↑ L1-L4 Ca content ↑ trabecular tibial perimeter ↑ L1-L4 Ca content ↑ trabecular number	OVX Fisher 344 rats (96 females, 6 week-old) AAS Histomorphometric method	Scholz-Ahrens *et al.*[296]
Oligofructose FOS (DP2-8) or Inulin + FOS (DP2-8) Inulin (DP > 23)	5 5 4 weeks	NS femoral BMC NS femoral BMD ↑ Spine BMC ↑ Femoral BMD ↑ Spine BMC ↓ Bone resorption	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty males, 7 weeks old) DEXA ELISA	Kruger *et al.*[297]
HP inulin (DPav25) + ITF_{-MIX} (OF) HP inulin (DPav25) + Oligofructose HP inulin (DPav25) ITF_{-MIX} BC (branched –chain) inulin	5 + 5 5 + 5 10 10 10 28 d	NS tibial Ca content NS tibial Ca content NS tibial Ca content NS tibial Ca content NS tibial Ca content	Growing Wistar rats (ten males, 6 weeks old) AAS	Coudray *et al.*[298]
ITF_{-MIX}	5·5 21 d	↑ Femoral BMC ↑ Distal femur BMD	OVX Sprague–Dawley rat (twenty-six females, 6 month-old) Ca^{45} kinetics method AAS	Zafar *et al.*[437]
Inulin Inulin + ITF	5 5 + 0·8 21 d	NS femoral Ca content ↑ Femoral bone Ca content *v.* inulin	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty-eight males, 6 weeks old) Ca^{45} kinetics method AAS	Zafar *et al.*[305]

Table 13. *Continued*

Substance	Amount (g/100 g diet length of treatment)	Bone effect	Study design/animals (*n*)/method analysis	References
ITF + FOS	10(μg/gwt/d) + 7·5 20 + 7·5 40 + 7·5 80 + 7·5 3 months	↑ Femoral BMD *v.* ITF ↑ Femoral BMD *v.* ITF ↑ Femoral failure load ↓ urinary DPD ↑ Femoral BMD *v.* ITF ↑ Femoral failure load ↓ Urinary DPD ↑ ↑ Femoral BMD *v.* ITF *v.* (ITF10 + FOS) ↑ Femoral failure load ↓ Urinary DPD	Intact or OVX Wistar rat (eighty-eight females, 3 month-old) DEXA Three-point bending test RIA	Mathey *et al.*[303]
Difructose anhydride III (DFAIII)	1·5 or 3 8 weeks	In intact rats NS maximum breaking force NS distal femoral BMD In OVX rats ↑ (Femoral Ca content ↑ Distal femoral BMD with 3 % DFAIII ↑ Maximum breaking force ↓ Urinary DPD in DFAIII groups (trend)	Intact or OVX Sprague–Dawley rats (fifty females, 6 weeks old) DEXA, 3-point bending test ELISA	Mitamura & Hara[438]
Difructose anhydride III (DFAIII) DFAIII + vitamin D deficient	1·5 8 weeks	In intact rats NS femoral Ca content In OVX rats ↑ Femoral Ca content	Intact or OVX Sprague–Dawley rats (sixty-four females, 6 weeks old, vitamin D deficient or not) AAS	Mitamura & Hara[439]
Oligofructose Inulin	5 5 3 months	↑ Femur BMD ↑ Cancellous tibia area ↑ Femur BMD ↑ Femoral BMC ↑ Cancellous L3 area ↓ CTX1	Growing Wistar rats (thirty-eight males, 6 weeks old) DEXA (pQCT) ELISA	Nzeusseu *et al.*[440]
FOS	5 23 d	NS femur BMD ↑ Femur biomechanical properties	Growing Wistar rats (sixteen males, 4 weeks old) DEXA Three-point bending test	Lobo *et al.*[441]
FOS or ITF + FOS	4 months	↑ Whole body BMD *v.* control OVX ↑ Tibial BMC *v.* control OVX ↑ Lumbar BMD and BMC *v.* control OVX (no additive effects with ITF + FOS) ↑ Tibial microarchitectural properties in ITF + FOS (↑ trabecular number *v.* OVX control)	OVX Sprague–Dawley rat (sixty-nine females, 9 month-old) DEXA Tomography	Devareddy *et al.*[304]
Lc inulin	5 8 weeks	NS BMD ↑ Femoral BMC NS bone markers (OC, CTX1)	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty-eight females, 3 weeks old) DEXA ELISA	Jamieson *et al.*[442]

NS British Journal of Nutrition

Table 13. *Continued*

Substance	Amount (g/100 g diet length of treatment)	Bone effect	Study design/animals (*n*)/method analysis	References
Inulin long – chain	7·5	Trend to ↑ diaphysal femoral BMD and BMC	Growing Wistar rats (forty males, 3 month-old) DEXA	Demigne *et al.*[443]
or	7·5			
Inulin short – chain	3 months	NS bone markers (OC, DPD)	Three-point bending test	
Chicory		↑ Diaphysal femoral BMD and BMC	RIA	
		↑ Femoral failure load		
		NS bone markers (OC, DPD)		
SO (soybean oil) + ITF_{-MIX}	15 + 10·87	NS femoral Ca content	Growing Wistar rats (twenty-four males rats, 6 weeks old)	Lobo *et al.*[444]
SO + Fish oil + ITF_{-MIX}	15 + 11·5 + 10·87	↑ Femoral Ca content	AAS	
	15 d	↑ Tibial Ca content	Three-point bending test	
		↑ Tibial bone strength		
ITF or	0·2	↑ Distal femoral BMD and	OVX mice (sixty-four females ddY strain, 6 weeks old)	Ohta *et al.*[302]
FOS or	5	trabecular femur *v.* control OVX	Tomography	
ITF + FOS	0·2 + 5	(additive effects with ITF + FOS)		
	6 weeks			
Inulin	10	↑ Mg bone content	C57B16J mice (twenty-four males, 4 months old)	Rondon *et al.*[445]
	2 weeks		AAS	

GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; AAS, atomic absorption spectrophotometry; ICPMS, inductively coupled plasma MS; DP, degree of polymerisation; BMC, bone mineral content; BMD, bone mineral density; OF, oligofructose; DEXA, dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry; ITF, inulin-type fructans; DPD, deoxypyridinoline; OVX, ovariectomized. Femoral mechanical testing (three-point bending test).

Twelve older postmenopausal women (of at least 5 years past the onset of menopause) drank 100 ml of water containing 5 or 10 g of lactulose or a reference substance at breakfast for 9 d. True fractional Ca absorption was calculated using Ca isotope ratios, and consumption of lactulose was found to increase Ca absorption in a dose–response way[285].

In a crossover trial, twelve postmenopausal women were given a 200 ml yogurt to drink twice a day (at breakfast and lunch) containing either GOS (20 g) or sucrose for 9 d; a greater true Ca absorption (16 %) was observed after consumption of a product rich in GOS. In addition, no increased urinary Ca excretion was observed, suggesting that GOS could also indirectly increase the uptake of Ca by bones and/or inhibit bone resorption[286].

Adolphi *et al.*[287] tested the hypothesis that, in postmenopausal women (between 48 and 67 years and who had been postmenopausal for 10·5 (SEM 0·7) years consumption of fermented milk (supplemented with Ca) at bedtime could prevent the nocturnal peak of bone resorption by decelerating its turnover and that this effect could be improved by adding Ca absorption enhancers. Actually, they showed that indeed such a practice can reduce the nocturnal bone resorption and that supplementation with Ca had no additional effect unless absorption enhancers such as ITF and caseinphosphopeptides were added.

Kim *et al.*[288] who investigated the effects of ITF supplementation (8 g/d for 3 months) in postmenopausal women (mean age: 60 year) showed that apparent Ca absorption was significantly increased by 42 % in the ITF group, while a 29 % decrease was observed in the placebo group. This was associated with lower alkaline phosphate plasma levels (a parameter which is actually not specific of bone formation) and a trend towards a slight reduction in urinary deoxypyridinolin (a biomarker for bone resorption). As expected, due to the very short length of exposure, BMD was not modified by the treatment.

Finally, fifteen women (who were a minimum of 10 year past the onset of menopause and had taken no hormone replacement therapy for the past years) were treated with 10 g/d of a specific mixture of ITF for 6 weeks, according to a double-blind, placebo-controlled crossover design. True fractional Ca absorption, measured by dual isotopes before and after treatment, was significantly increased (+7 %) in women with lower initial BMD[289].

In institutionalised patients. Bone resorption, used as indicator of Ca retention, remained unchanged in institutionalised adults after 3 weeks of treatment with 13 g/day of ITF-fortified beverages[290].

Outline of general rules

Involvement of the colon. The main points arising from the available studies are that the Ca sparing effect elicited by a prebiotic effect involves colonic absorption. Indeed, using *in vitro* Ussing chambers, Raschka & Daniel[262] provided the evidence of the effect of ITF_{-MIX} on transepithelial Ca fluxes in large intestine of rats.

Levrat *et al.*[291] showed that dietary ITF given in the range of 0–20 % in the diet-stimulated intestinal Ca absorption in a dose-dependent manner, coinciding with a progressive

Table 14. The prebiotic effects on mineral absorption in the rat

Substance	Amount g/100 g diet length of treatment (*n*)	Mineral absorption	Study design Animals (*n*) Method analysis	References
FOS	5 3 d	↑ Fractional Ca^{47} absorption	Fisher 344 (forty males, 38 weeks old) Ca^{47} method Sc^{47} method Gamma counter	Brommage *et al.*[295]
FOS	5 28 d	↑ Apparent Ca and Mg absorption in intact rats ↑ Apparent Mg absorption in cececomized rats	Intact or cececomized rats AAS	Ohta *et al.*[292]
FOS (low Mg, high Ca and high P)	1 5	↑ Apparent Mg absorption	Mg-deficient rats AAS	Ohta *et al.*[307]
FOS	5 2 weeks	↑ Apparent Ca, Mg and Fe absorption Improve recovery from anemia	Fe-deficient rats for 3 weeks (anaemic rats) AAS	Ohta *et al.*[308]
FOS (Cr-mordanted cellulose as an unabsorbable marker)	5 1 d	↑ Apparent Ca and Mg absorption and Colorectal absorption of Ca and Mg	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (twenty-eight males, 6 weeks old) (colon and rectum) AAS	Ohta *et al.*[257]
GOS	20 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption	OVX wistar rats AAS	Chonan *et al.* [434]
TOS (transgalactosylated oligosaccharides)	5 10 10 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption	Growing Wistar rats (males) AAS	Chonan & Watanuki[446]
FOS or Chicory inulin Raftiline ST	10 24 d	Both ↑ apparent Ca, Mg and Zn retention NS on Cu absorption Raftilose ↑ apparent Fe	Wistar rats (thirty males, 100 g) ICPMS	Delzenne *et al.*[268]
Lactitol-oligosaccharide (LO) Galacto-oligosaccharides (GOS)	5 2 weeks	↑ Apparent Ca absorption in LO ↑ Apparent Mg absorption in LO and GOS	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (males, 8 weeks old) AAS	Yanahira *et al.*[447]
FOS	10 10 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption	Growing gastrectomised Sprague–Dawley rats (seventeen males, 4 weeks old) AAS	Ohta *et al.*[260]
FOS	5 3 d	↑ True and apparent Ca absorption ↑ Ca balance	Growing Wistar rats (sixteen males, 6 weeks old) Ca^{45} kinetics study AAS	Morohaschi *et al.*[448]
FOS short–chain (normal and Ca deficient diet)	10 10d	↑ CaBP levels Independent of 1,25(Oh)2D3 action	Rats (intestinal CaBP levels) AAS	Takasaki *et al.* [261]
FOS (DP3–50) FOS + phytic acid (PA)	10 10 + 7 21 d	↑ Apparent Ca, Mg, Fe, Cu absorption ↑ Cecal Ca, Mg NS Ca status ↑ Cecal Ca NS cecal Ca *v.* PA	Growing Wistar rat (thirty-two males, 6 weeks old) AAS	Lopez *et al.*[258]
FOS	5 60 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption ↑ Fractional Ca absorption	Growing Wistar rats (sixteen males, 6 weeks old) AAS	Takahara *et al.*[435]
Inulin Inulin + resistant starch	10 5 21 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption ↑ Ca retention (higher effect with inulin + resistant starch)	Adult Wistar rats (thirty-two males, 8 weeks old) AAS	Younes *et al.*[449]

Table 14. *Continued*

Substance	Amount g/100 g diet length of treatment (*n*)	Mineral absorption	Study design Animals (*n*) Method analysis	References
Difructose anhydride III (DFAIII)	3	↑ Apparent Ca absorption	Intact or OVX growing Sprague–Dawley rats (twenty females, 6 weeks old)	Mitamura *et al.*[450]
DFAIII	4 weeks	↑ Ca absorption rate was higher in cecolonectomized rats		
	1·5		OVX or OVX cecocolonectomy growing Sprague–Dawley rats (twenty females, 6 weeks old)	
	3			
	4 weeks		AAS	
Ca + Oligofructose	0·5 + 2·5	↓ Apparent Ca absorption (after 4 weeks)	OVX Fisher 344 rats (ninety-six females, 6 weeks old)	Scholz-Ahrens *et al.*[296]
	0·5 + 5·0	NS apparent Ca absorption	AAS	
	0·5 + 10	↑ Apparent Ca absorption		
	1·0 + 50	*v.* OVX (week 8)		
	(16 weeks)	↑ Apparent Ca absorption		
		v. OVX (week 4)		
		v. OVX (week 8)		
		v. OVX (week 16)		
HP inulin (DPav25) + ITF_{-MIX} (OF)	5 + 5	↑ Apparent Ca and Mg absorption	Growing Wistar rats (ten males, 6 weeks old)	Coudray *et al.*[298]
HP inulin (DPav25) + oligofructose		↑ Ca and Mg balance	AAS	
HP inulin (DPav25)	5 + 5	OF + HP: additive effect		
ITF_{-MIX}	10			
Branched chain (BC) inulin	10			
	10			
	28 d			
Oligofructose FOS (DP2-8) or	5	NS urinary Ca excretion	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty males, 7 weeks old) ICPOES	Kruger *et al.*[297]
Inulin (DP > 23)	5	NS urinary Ca excretion		
Inulin + FOS (DP2-8)	5	↑ Ca bioavailability	(vista model inductively coupled plasma optical emission spectroscopy)	
	4 weeks	↑ Urinary Ca excretion		
ITF_{-MIX}	5·5	↑ True Ca absorption	OVX Sprague–Dawley rat (twenty-six females, 6 month old)	Zafar *et al.*[437]
	21 d	↑ Ca balance		
			Ca^{45} kinetics method	
			AAS	
Inulin	5	NS true Ca absorption *v.* ITF	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty-eight males, 6 weeks old) AAS,	Zafar *et al.*[305]
Inulin + ITF	5 + 0·8		Ca^{45} kinetics method	
	21 d			
FOS short − chain	3	↑ Apparent Ca, Mg, Fe absorption	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty-eight males)	Asvarujanon[451]
Four non-digestible saccharides	4 weeks	↑ Apparent Ca, Mg absorption	AAS	
FOS short-chain	Measurement	Higher effect with DFAIII	Growing OVX Sprague–Dawley (sixty-eight females, 6 weeks old)	
Four non-digestible saccharides	after 10–14 d	DFAIII ↑ Fe absorption		
FOS short-chain	3	NS apparent Ca absorption in OVX rats	AAS	
Four non-digestible saccharides	4 weeks	↑ Apparent Ca absorption *v.* FOS in OVX rats		
	Measurement			
	after 24–28 d			
	3			
	5 weeks			
Difructose anhydride III	1·5 or 3	Both doses restore the reduced Ca absorption in OVX rats and Mg absorption in both OVX and SH rats	Intact or OVX Sprague–Dawley rats (fifty females, 6 weeks old)	Mitamura & Hara[438]
	8 weeks		AAS	
ITF_{-MIX}	10	↑ Net transepithelial Ca transport (large intestin)	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (forty-eight males) (transepithelial Ca *in vitro*)	Raschka[262]
	21 d	↑ Ca absorption rate (caecum)	AAS	

Table 14. *Continued*

Substance	Amount g/100 g diet length of treatment (*n*)	Mineral absorption	Study design Animals (*n*) Method analysis	References
Ca + inulin	0·25 + 10 0·50 + 10 0·75 + 10 40 d	After 13 d ↑ Apparent Ca absorption Higher effect when Ca is low (0·25) or high (0·75) After 40 d ↑ Apparent Ca absorption Higher effect when Ca is low (0·25)	Growing rats, 10 weeks (ten males wistar) AAS	Coudray *et al.*[452]
Inulin	7·5 3 weeks	↑ True Ca absorption Higher effect in 10 and 20 months old animals *v.* those aged 2 and 5 months old	Wistar rats (eighteen males) 2 months old 5 months old 10 months old 20 months old Ca^{44} method, AAS ICPMS	Coudray *et al.*[453]
Difructose anhydride III (DFAIII) FOS	3 3 4 weeks	↑ Fe absorption DFAIII restores gastrectomy-induced Fe malabsorption	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (eighteen males, 4 weeks old) Growing gastrectomized Sprague–Dawley rats (thirty-two males, 4 weeks old) AAS	Shiga *et al.*[454]
Shoyu polysaccharides (SPS)		↑ Fe absorption in organs	Anemics rats (*in vivo*, *in vitro*)	Kobayashi *et al.*[309]
FOS	5 23 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption ↑ Apparent Mg absorption	Growing Wistar rats (sixteen males, 4 weeks old) AAS	Lobo *et al.*[441]
Oligofructose (chicory roots, Inulin (chicory roots)	5 5 3 months	↑ Apparent Ca absorption (Higher effect with inulin which could be related to an ↑ calbindin-9K)	Growing Wistar rats (thirty-eight males, 6 weeks old) AAS	Nzeusseu *et al.*[440]
Difructose anhydride III (DFAIII) DFAIII + vitamin D-deficient	1·5 8 weeks	In intact rats NS apparent Ca absorption ↑ Apparent Ca absorption in vitamin D-deficient rats In OVX rats ↑ Apparent Ca absorption (higher effect in vitamin D-deficient rats)	Intact or OVX Sprague–Dawley rats (sixty-four females, 6 weeks old, vitamin D deficient or not) AAS	Mitamura & Hara[439]
Inulin	7·5 3 weeks	↑ True Cu and Zn absorption Lower effect in 10 and 20 months old animals *v.* those aged 2 and 5 months old	Wistar rats (eighteen males) 2 months old 5 months old 10 months old 20 months old Cu^{65} Zn^{67} method, AAS ICPMS	Coudray *et al.*[455]
Inulin long – chain or Inulin short – chain Chicory	7·5 3 months	↑ Apparent Ca absorption (1 month) NS 3 month	Growing Wistar rats (forty males, 3 months old) AAS	Demigne *et al.*[443]
Inulin	10 2 weeks	↑ Mg absorption	C57B16J mice (twenty-four males, 4 months old) AAS	Rondon *et al.*[445]

Table 14. *Continued*

Substance	Amount g/100 g diet length of treatment (*n*)	Mineral absorption	Study design Animals (*n*) Method analysis	References
GR inulin	0·1	NS on calcemia level	Growing Sprague–Dawley rats (thirty-six females, 6 weeks old)	Azorin-Ortuno[456]
Artichoke inulin	(0·82 g/d human	↑ Calcemia		
ITF_{-MIX}	equivalent dose)	NS on calcemia level	Colorimetric assay	
Artichoke + P95 oligofructose	75 d	NS on calcemia level		
Soyabean oil (SO) + ITF_{-MIX}	15 + 10·87	↑ Apparent Ca absorption	Growing Wistar rats (twenty-four males rats, 6 weeks old)	Lobo *et al.*[444]
SO + Fish oil + ITF_{-MIX}	15 + 11·5 + 10·87	↑ Apparent Ca absorption (higher effect)		
	15 d		AAS	
Inulin HPX	2·5	NS apparent Ca absorption	Wistar rats (twenty-four males, 6 weeks old)	Klobukowski *et al.*[457]
	5 d		AAS	
FOS	0·08 or 0·25	FOS ↑ apparent Ca, Mg and Fe absorption	Kung-Ming mice (sixty males, 4 weeks old)	Wang *et al.* (with mice)[458]
FOS + phytic acid (PA)	0·08 + 1 or 0·25 + 1	and counteract the deleterious effects of PA	AAS	
	4 weeks			

FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; TOS, transgalactosylated oligosaccharides; OF, oligofructose; AAS, atomic absorption spectrometry; ICPOES, inductively coupled plasma optical emission spectroscopy; DP, degree of polymerisation; ITF, inulin-type fructans; ICPMS, inductively coupled plasma MS; OVX, ovariectomized.
Apparent absorption: Ca intake (*I*) − Ca fecal excretion (*F*).
Net retention: Ca intake (*I*) − (Ca fecal excretion (*F*) + Ca urinary excretion (*U*)).
True intestinal Ca absorption: (Ca^{45} Ca^{44}) = (*I* − *F*) + *f* (endogenous net Ca excretion).
Fractional Ca absorption: Ca^{47}, Sc^{49} ratio (*I* − *F*).
Ca balance: 4–7 d balance period (*I*, *F*, *U* using metabolic cages) % Ca^{45} absorption: % Ca^{45} oral dose/% Ca^{45} IP dose × 100.

Table 15. The prebiotic effects on mineral absorption in the human

Substance	Amount (g/d) length of treatment (*n*)	Mineral absorption	Study design/subjects (*n*)	Reference
Sc inulin (infant formula)	0·75, 1 or 1·25	NS apparent Ca absorption (↑ Apparent and net Fe retention with 1 g/d) (↑ Apparent and net Mg retention with 0·75 & 1·25 g/d)	R study Formula-fed infants (6–12 months old) (36) AAS	Yap *et al.*[269]
Oligofructose	15 9 d	↑ True fractional Ca absorption	R, DB, CO study Male adolescents (24) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}, Ca^{48}) ICPMS	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[270]
Oligofructose or ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 3 weeks	NS with oligofructose ↑ True Ca absorption with ITF_{-MIX}	DB, CO study Young girls (29) Kinetic technique (Ca^{46}, Ca^{42}) TIMMS	Griffin *et al.*[271]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 3 weeks	↑ True Ca absorption	R, CO study Young girls (54) Kinetic technique (Ca^{46}, Ca^{42}) TIMMS	Griffin *et al.*[272]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 1 year	↑ Fractional Ca absorption	DB study Male and female adolescents (48) Kinetic technique (Ca^{46}, Ca^{42}) TIMMS	Abrams *et al.*[274]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 1 year	↑ True fractional Ca absorption (thiry-two responders and sixteen non-responders)	DB, PC, sex stratification study Male and female adolescents (48) Kinetic technique (Ca^{46}, Ca^{42}) TIMMS	Abrams *et al.*[276]
ScFOS	10 37 d	NS true fractional Ca absorption (↑ true Mg absorption)	R, DB, CO study Adolescent girls (14) Low Ca intake (Ca^{44}, Ca^{48}) ICPMS	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[273]
Inulin (Chicory roots)	40 28 d	↑ Apparent Ca absorption	3 × 3 Latin square Young men (9) AAS	Coudray *et al.*[277]
Inulin OF	17 3 d	NS mineral (Ca, Mg, Zn, Fe) excretion because of ileostomy	DB, CO study ileostomised patients (five men and five women) AAS	Ellegard *et al.*[293]
Inulin, FOS, or GOS	15 21 d	NS true fractional Ca or Fe absorption (Methodologic concern: analysis after 24 h urines)	DB, CO study Young men (12) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}, Ca^{48}) ICPMS	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[278]
Inulin + Ca (210 mg/d)	15 5 d	NS urinary Ca excretion (lower iPTH lower → later increase in Ca absorption)	R, DB, CO study Young woman (50) AAS IRMA	Teuri *et al.*[279]
Shoyu polysaccharides (SPS)	0·6 4 weeks	↑ In plasma Fe in the SPS group	R, DB, PC parallel study Young woman (45) AAS	Kobayashi *et al.*[309]
FOS in milk	0·75 g/100 ml 1 d	NS true fractional Ca absorption	R, DB, CO study Young men (8) and women (7) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}, Ca^{42}) ICPMS	Lopez-Huertas *et al.*[280]

Table 15. *Continued*

Substance	Amount (g/d) length of treatment (*n*)	Mineral absorption	Study design/subjects (*n*)	Reference
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 8 weeks	↑ True fractional Ca absorption (responders/non responders) Colonic absorption	Young adults (13) Kinetic technique (Ca^{42}, Ca^{46}) TIMMS	Abrams *et al.*[281]
Lactulose	5 or 10 9 d	NS true fractional Ca absorption with 5 g/d ↑ True Ca absorption with 10 g/d	R, DB, CO study POM (12) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}, Ca^{48}) ICPMS	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[285]
Transgalacto-oligosaccharide (TOS)	20 9 d	↑ True Ca absorption	R, DB, CO study POM (12) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}, Ca^{48}) ICPMS	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[286]
ScFOS	10 35 d	↑ Mg absorption, accompanied by an ↑ In plasma Mg^{25} and higher Mg excretion	R, DB, CO study POM (12) Kinetic technique (Mg^{25}) ICPMS	Tahiri *et al.*[283]
ScFOS	10 35 d	NS true Ca absorption Trend for ↑ In women > 6 years POM subgroup	R, DB, CO study POM (12) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}) ICPMS	Tahiri *et al.*[284]
Chicory fructan fiber	8 3 months	↑ Apparent Ca absorption ↑ Apparent Fe absorption	DB parallel design POM (13) AAS	Kim *et al.*[288]
ScFOS	10 35 d	↑ Cu absorption No effect on ZN and Se	R, DB, CO study POM (12) Kinetic technique (Cu^{65} Zn^{67} Se^{74}) ICPMS	Ducros *et al.*[282]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	10 6 weeks	↑ Fractional Ca absorption	R, DB, PC, CO study POM (50) Kinetic technique (Ca^{46}, Ca^{42}) ICPMS	Holloway *et al.*[289]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX} + Ca + CPP + fermented milk	1·75 g/cup 14 d	↑ Intestinal absorption with ITF_{-MIX} + Ca + CPP	Parallel DB, PC study POM (85) HPLC Colorimetric assay (Kone)	Adolphi *et al.*[287]

Sc, short chain; R, randomized; DB, double-blind; AAS, atomic absorption spectrometry; CO, crossover; OF, oligofructose; ICPMS, inductively coupled plasma MS; ScFOS, short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides; ITF, inulin-type fructans; TIMMS, thermal ionisation magnetic sector MS; PC, placebo control; CPP, casein phosphopeptide.
Fractional Ca: (Ca^{44}, Ca^{43}) ratio; (Ca^{46}, Ca^{42}) ratio.

Table 16. The prebiotic effects on human bone health

Substance	Amount (g/d length of treatment (*n*))	Bone effect	Study design/subjects (*n*)/method analysis	References
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 1 year	↑ BMC ↑ BMD	DB, PC, Sex stratification study Male and female adolescents (48) DEXA	Abrams *et al.*[274]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	8 1 year	Higher Ca accretion in responders (Ca absorption ↑ by at least 3 %)	DB, PC, Sex stratification study Adolescents (48) 32 responders and 16 non-responders DEXA	Abrams *et al.*[276]
ScFOS	10 37 d	NS bone resorption (DPD) NS PTH NS vitamin D	R, DB, CO study Adolescent (40) HPLC	Van den Heuvel *et al.*[273]
Inulin + Ca (210 mg/d)	15 5 d	NS PTH	R, DB, CO study Young woman (50) IRMA	Teuri *et al.*[279]
ScFOS	10 35 d	NS bone turnover (OC-DPD) ↘ 1,25(OH)2D in early POM subgroup	R, DB, CO study POM (12) Kinetic technique (Ca^{44}) ICPMS, RIA	Tahiri *et al.*[284]
Chicory fructan fiber	8 3 months	NS lumbar spine or femoral neck BMD (short term study) NS bone turnover markers Trend to ↘ DPD	DB parallel study POM (13) DEXA, IRMA, ELISA	Kim *et al.*[288]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX}	10 6 weeks	↑ Bone turnover (OC-DPD)	R, DB, PC, CO design POM (50) IRMA–ELISA	Holloway *et al.*[289]
Isoflavones + prebiotics or Isoflavones + scFOS	7 30 d	NS bone formation (b-ALP) ↘ bone resorption (DPD) compared to when isoflavones are given alone Higher effects in early POM *v.* late POM	Parallel DB, PC study POM (39) IRMA-RIA	Mathey *et al.*[459]
ScFOS + ITF_{-MIX} ITF_{-MIX} + Ca + CPP + fermented milk	1·75 g/cup 14 d	Fermented milk ↘ nocturnal bone turnover (↘ DPD) Additional effect of ITF_{-MIX} + Ca + CPP	Parallel DB, PC study POM (85) HPLC	Adolphi *et al.*[287]
Inulin	15 3 weeks	NS bone resorption (urinary NTx)	DB, CO study Institutionalized adults (< 60 year old) (15) ELISA	Dahl *et al.*[290]

ScFOS, short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides; ITF, inulin-type fructans; BMC, bone mineral content; BMD, bone mineral density; DB, double-blind; PC, placebo control; DEXA, dual-energy X-ray absorptiometry; DPD, deoxypyridinoline; CO, crossover; PTH, parathyroid hormone; IRMA, immunoradiometric assay; POM, postmenopausal women; ICPMS, inductively coupled plasma MS; OC-DPD, osteocalcin deoxypyridinoline; PP, caseinophosphopetide; b-ALP, bone specific alkaline phosphatase; ELISA, enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay; CPP, casein phosphopeptide; NTx, N-Telopeptide.

decrease in caecal or ileal pH, hypertrophy of caecal walls and a rise in caecal pool of SCFA.

Moreover, Ohta *et al.*[257] demonstrated that in rats fed a ITF-containing diet, but not in those given a control diet, the ratio of Ca or Mg to Cr (Cr being used as an unabsorbable marker to calculate apparent absorption of Ca and Mg) were correlated with the fractional length of transit along the colon and rectum, indicating linear disappearance of Ca and Mg during the colorectal passage. Consequently, in cecectomised rats, ITF failed to increase Ca absorption[292].

Similarly, in patients with conventional ileostomy, data analysis of ITF effects on mineral absorption and excretion (Mg, Zn, Ca, Fe) showed no significant influence[293].

This offers an explanation as to why Van den Heuvel *et al.*[278] found no significant differences in mineral absorption in healthy young adults, irrespective of the treatment they received (consisting of a constant basal diet supplemented for 21 d with 15 g/d ITF, or GOS, or not supplemented), as the 24 h period of urine collection used in the present study was too short to include the colonic component of Ca absorption and thus to make up a complete balance necessary to detect the effect of fructans.

Indeed, Abrams *et al.*[281] gave 8 g of ITF-$_{MIX}$ to young adults (average age of 23 years) for 8 weeks and confirmed that Ca absorption after treatment occurred principally in the colon (69·6 ± 18·6 %).

Nevertheless, it is still unclear whether the Ca-sparing effect results from induction of specific bacterial strains or from their 'colonic food' activity[294].

Dose effect. Various doses of ITF have been investigated ranging from 1·1 to 17 g/d (and even 40 g/d in one case). A minimum level of 8 g/d seems to be required to elicit an improvement on both Ca absorption and bone mineralisation. Indeed, Lopez-Huertas *et al.*[280] explained the lack of effect of the addition of 1·1 g ITF or caseinophosphopeptides to Ca-enriched milks in adults by the very low dose provided in the diet.

However, with regard to animal studies, ITF appears to exhibit a dose-dependent effect on Ca absorption, as well. Levrat *et al.*[291] showed that dietary ITF given in the range of 0–20 % in the diet-stimulated intestinal Ca absorption in a dose-dependent manner. Similarly, in the study carried out by Brommage *et al.*[295], a near linear increase in Ca absorption was demonstrated in rats fed a 5 and 10 % lactulose-containing diet. Nevertheless, it appears that when a minimum is reached, Ca absorption enhancement occurs whatever maybe the dose, as a diet supplemented with either 10 % of ITF[268] or 5 % of oligofructose or other non-digestible carbohydrates[295] leads to a similar increase (about 60–65 %) of the apparent absorption of Ca, even though, raising the content of oligofructose in the diet from 2·5 to 10 % in ovariectomised rats, a bone-sparing effect has been shown, independent of the dose by Scholz-Ahrens *et al.*[296].

Test substances. Various substances such as the different types of ITF, GOS, soya-oligosaccharides, lactulose, or resistant starch have provided evidence of a positive effect on Ca absorption, at least in the rat. However, the biological effect is likely to be related to the rate of fermentation which is mainly dependent on the degree of polymerisation (DP), as well as the solubility and the structural arrangement of the carbohydrates. In rats fed ITF with different degrees of polymerisation (ITF-$_{Dpav3-4}$, ITF-$_{Dpav25}$, ITF-$_{MIX}$), Kruger *et al.*[297] showed that the various ITF do not have the same effect on Ca retention, femoral bone density, bone Ca content and excretion of collagen degradation products in the urine.

From the available data, it can be concluded that the higher biological effects were elicited by a combination of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect with different chain length. Indeed, ITF-$_{MIX}$ outperformed the traditional molecules given alone with regard to Ca absorption. Indeed, in adolescent girls, such a combination increased the true Ca absorption by almost 20 %, while oligofructose alone did not show any significant effect[271]. This conceptual rule is even more apparent in animal experiments. Coudray *et al.*[298] compared different types of fructans which differed in both sugar chain length and chain branching, and found a synergistic effect of a combination of ITF with different chain lengths in adult male rats.

A potential mechanism for the improved efficiency of such a mixture could be the larger distribution of fermentation along the colon, depending on the chain length, which is critical to obtain maximum efficacy at low daily doses. Actually, the short-chain components such as oligofructose are most active in the proximal part of the colon, while the long-chain molecules have their effect in the distal part. The combination of both molecules offers a synergistic effect on Ca absorption, the fermentation process taking place over the full length of the colon, thus maximising the mucosal surface through which the extra solubilised Ca can migrate[299].

Influence of physiological status. It appears that some subjects are more likely to benefit from consumption of inulin, according to their physiological status.

Initial status in calcium. First, of all, Griffin *et al.*[272] demonstrated that the most consistent identifiable determinant of a beneficial effect on Ca absorption was the fractional Ca absorption at baseline with those individuals with lower absorption during placebo period showing the greatest benefit. These data were corroborated by data published by Holloway *et al.*[289] who showed that, in fifteen postmenopausal women (who were a minimum of 10 year past the onset of menopause) treated with 10 g/d of ITF-$_{MIX}$ for 6 weeks, true fractional Ca absorption, measured by dual isotopes before and after treatment, was significantly increased only in those with lower initial BMD.

Oestrogen permeation. From human data, we can conclude that an improvement in Ca absorption is possible in adolescents or young adults. Similarly, a positive effect has been reported in older women. However, ITF failed to modulate Ca absorption during the first 5 years after the onset of menopause, a period, actually, predominantly characterised by hormonal disturbances. In fact, menopausal status is the overriding factor in determining bone loss in women in their early fifties. Thus, given the tremendous impact of gonadal hormones on bone health, a high- Ca intake will not offset osteopenia that occurs immediately following menopause.

However, ITF could still remain a source for putative innovative dietary health intervention to prevent post-menopausal osteoporosis by modulating phytoestrogens bioavalability. Setchell *et al.*[300] have found that intestinal metabolism of isoflavones (the major class of phytoestrogens) would be

the more important clue to the clinical efficacy of soya foods in preventing osteopenia. Thus, because a greater efficacy of phytoestrogens can be expected if converted into equol by the intestinal microbiota, there is a good rationale for considering non-digestible carbohydrates with prebiotic effects, targeting an increase of isoflavones bioavailability. Nevertheless, available data are still conflicting. In animal studies, it has been shown that dietary oligofructose may increase β-glucosidase activity in the large intestine, leading to an enhancement of the large intestinal absorption of these compounds[301]. Furthermore, in ovariectomised mice[302] or rats[303], two experimental models for postmenopausal osteoporosis, oligofructose consumption has been shown to augment the bone sparing effect of isoflavones by improving equol production. Again, Devareddy *et al.*[304] demonstrated that although the combination of ITF and soya had no additive effect on BMD, it had a greater effect in reversing the loss of certain microarchitectural parameters such as tibial trabecular number, separation and thickness. By contrast, from a rat experiment, Zafar *et al.*[305] concluded that isoflavones could enhance Ca absorption, without synergy from ITF, and that actually ITF decreased equol production.

In postmenopausal women, Piazza *et al.*[306] showed that the presence of ITF in the diet (3·6 g twice a day) facilitated the absorption of isoflavones. As far as bone metabolism is concerned, Mathey *et al.*[303] demonstrated that ITF consumption was able to improve the protective effect of isoflavones on bone resorption.

From mineral absorption to health benefits

The key question of whether the extra absorption of minerals may exhibit substantial benefits needs to be addressed.

Minerals. Ohta *et al.*[307] showed that, in rats fed ITF-$_{Dpav3-4}$ (1 or 5 %in the diet), apparent Mg absorption was increased, as compared with controls. The highest dose (and sufficient Mg in the diet, i.e. 0·5 mg/g) resulted in a reduction of auricular and facial peripheral hyperaemia and hemorrhage and improved inflammation in Mg-deficient rats. Similarly, in Fe-deficient animals, ITF-$_{Dpav3-4}$ feeding not only increased Fe, Ca and Mg absorption but also improved recovery from anaemia, as well[308]. Kobayashi *et al.*[309] also found that soya polysaccharides could enhance Fe absorption and improve anaemia.

Consequently, these studies provide the evidence that ITF are able to elicit health improvement by enhancing mineral and Ca absorption. Further studies are necessary to assess this possibility.

Calcium and bone health. The adequate consumption of Ca in conjunction with optimisation of its absorption is likely to optimise bone mass. It is thus necessary to prove that the benefits of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on Ca absorption persist and can be translated into benefits to bone health, in other words, whether the extra absorbed Ca is deposited in bones, as such a substantial bone benefit may have important implications for future preventative strategies for osteoporosis.

Even though animal data provide promising results on the role of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on bone health, they need to be confirmed by human intervention trials. Most of the scientific evidence of the bone sparing is based on the animal studies, in which they not only improve Ca absorption but also prevent bone loss in conditions of oestrogen deprivation. Actually, the major available data come from the Abrams's team[274] and the study with ITF-$_{MIX}$ is the only published data dealing with long-term effect. Thus, because when targeting bone mineralisation process, Ca is the most likely to be inadequate in terms of dietary intake, the enhancement of Ca accretion in bones, and hence BMD, in adolescents given ITF-$_{MIX}$ for 1 year, is very interesting. Indeed, adequate Ca intake in childhood is critical for the formation and retention of a healthy skeleton. However, if those molecules may help to optimise peak bone mass, their effect in older people, when bone turnover is increased, needs to be ascertained.

Moreover, because bone strength is the ultimate hallmark of bone quality, the issue of persistence of the beneficial effect on the skeleton is another issue important to consider, in order to assess their potential in the prevention of the risk of fracture.

Key points

(1) Ingredients showing a prebiotic effect are able to improve mineral absorption (and especially Ca) in the animals.
(2) Most data are available for ITF, in particular ITF-$_{Dpav3-4}$ as well asITF-$_{MIX}$.
(3) ITF have been found to increase Mg absorption in human subjects, nevertheless available data are very limited.
(4) These ingredients are able to enhance Ca absorption in human, depending on their physiological status (no effect in early postmenopausal women).
(5) The benefits on Ca absorption can be translated into benefits to bone health in animals.
(6) More interestingly, ITF-$_{MIX}$ given for 1 year to adolescents was able to elicit not only an enhancement of Ca accretion in bones but also BMD. In this light, such or similar may have important implications for future preventative startegies for osteoporosis.
(7) A combination of molecules with different degrees of polymerisation appears to be more efficient as shown with the research on ITF-$_{MIX}$ in comparison with the small and high MW fractions given alone.

Recommendations (future targets for research)

(1) Further studies are required to investigate the underlying mechanisms of the prebiotic effects on absorption of minerals, with special attention to the role of the specific changes in gut microbiota. Indeed the question still remains open of whether these effects are due to the changes in colonic microbiota composition (prebiotic effect) or any other mechanisms. In this regard, high-throughput methodologies such as metabolomics, for example, are warranted.
(2) Results from ITF, in particular ITF-$_{MIX}$, need to be confirmed in other ingredients showing a prebiotic effect for a generalisation.
(3) Further long-term well-designed clinical trials need to be implemented to prove that the benefits of these

ingredients persist in the longer term (because bone strength is the ultimate hallmark of bone quality, the issue of persistence of the effect of ITF-$_{DPav3-4}$ on the skeleton is important to consider) to assess their potential in the prevention of the risk of fracture.

(4) With regards to the bone target, it is interesting to focus on relevant populations, i.e. during childhood and during ageing.

(5) It is still challenging to investigate the potential synergy between the prebiotic effect and other nutrients (such as phytoestrogens) endowed with bone-sparing effect.

Prebiotic effects in weight management and obesity-related disorders

The main authors of this section are Professor Delzenne, Dr Cani and Dr Neyrinck.

Several reviews report the interest of non-digestible carbohydrates – which are prone to be fermented by the gut microbiota in the control of obesity and related metabolic disorders (Table 17). Carbohydrates showing a prebiotic effect have received special attention in this context, since they have been shown – mostly in experimental animal studies – to regulate food intake and weight gain, as well as metabolic disorders associated with obesity, such as liver steatosis, dyslipidemia, diabetes and/or even hypertension[310]. Most of the data published to date have been obtained through the supplementation with ITF as prebiotics. The relevance of changes in gut microbiota in the modulation of obesity and related disorders is discussed, taking into account both animal and human studies published so far.

Description of the prebiotic effects on obesity and related metabolic disorders

Prebiotic effects and regulation of food intake, fat mass and body weight

Animal studies. Numerous data have described the effect of prebiotics (5–10 % in feed) feeding on the evolution of body weight and fat mass in experimental animal models (Table 17). The observed decrease in fat mass had sometimes occurred without significant effect on body weight and has been observed in all the types of white adipose tissue (epididymal, visceral and or subcutaneous). In numerous studies of rodent models (lean, genetic or nutritional induced obese mice or rats), this decrease in fat mass following feeding with ingredients showing a prebiotic effect was associated with a reduction of food/energy intake. The decrease in food/energy intake is not observed when ITF prebiotics are substituted by non-fermentable dietary fibre (microcrystalline cellulose), suggesting that at least the colonic fermentation plays a role in the modulation of food intake[311,312].

Potential mechanism. The decrease in food intake associated with prebiotics feeding in animals might be linked to the modulation of GI peptides involved in the regulation of food intake. Endocrine cells present in the intestinal mucosa secrete peptides involved in the regulation of energy homeostasis. Among those peptides, glucagon-like peptide (GLP)-1, peptide Y Y (PYY), ghrelin and oxyntomodulin have recently been proposed as important modulators of food intake and energy expenditure[313–316].

Several data obtained in rats and mice show that ITF-$_{DPav3-4}$ reduce food intake, body weight gain and fat mass development, these features being associated with a significant increase in the portal plasma levels of anorexigenic peptides GLP-1 and PYY; some data also report a decrease in the serum level of orexigenic ghrelin upon prebiotics feeding[317–321]. Dietary intervention with ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in postnatal diets causes a rapid increase in GLP-1 in rats, and this influences fat mass and glycaemia in adulthood[322].

Prebiotics feeding promotes GLP-1 synthesis (mRNA and peptide content) in the proximal colon namely by a mechanism linked to the differentiation of precursor cells into enteroendocrine cells[323]. The overproduction of GLP-1 of mice supplemented with short-chain ITF could constitute a key event explaining several systemic effects of prebiotics, since the decrease in food intake and in fat mass after fructans treatment is abolished in GLP-1. Receptor knock-k out mice or in mice treated chronically with a GLP-1 receptor antagonist – Exendin 9–39[320].

Human data. In healthy human subjects, feeding 16 g/d of ITF-$_{DPav3-4}$ (short-chain ITF) promotes satiety following breakfast and diner, and reduces hunger and prospective food consumption after the dinner. This is accompanied by a significant 10 % lower total energy intake[324]. Similarly, Archer *et al.*[325] have demonstrated that the gut microbiota fermentation of ITF, added to food as fat-replacer, is able to lower energy intake during a test day. ITF feeding (20 g/d) increased plasma GLP-1 in one interventional study performed in patients presenting gastric reflux. The present study was not aimed at demonstrating an effect on food intake and/or satiety[326]. The authors suggested that the 'kinetics' of fermentation – assessed by H breath test – is important to take into account when assessing the influence of fermented nutrients on circulating gut peptides. The increase in H expired (marker of fermentation) correlates with the modulation of plasma GLP-1 level, which could explain the link between intestinal fermentation and gut peptide secretion.

According to this observation, we have recently demonstrated that the prebiotics-induced gut microbiota fermentation was associated with increased postprandial GLP-1 and PYY and subsequent changes in appetite sensations[327].

A recent study demonstrated that supplementation with ITF-$_{MIX}$ not only benefited bone mineralisation, but also had a significant benefit on the maintenance of an appropriate BMI, and fat mass in primarily non-obese young adolescents[328]. Daily intake of yacon syrup, allowing to bring 0·14 g FOS/kg per day, over 120 d, resulted in an increase in satiety sensation and a decrease in body weight, waist circumference and BMI in obese pre-menopausal women[329]. Interestingly, the relevance of gut hormone modulation in the management of obesity and metabolic syndrome in human subjects is supported by some data. A recent clinical trial supports the evidence that ITF-$_{DPav3-4}$ (short-chain ITF) decrease food intake, body weight gain and fat mass development in obese subjects. The authors found a higher plasma PYY levels as well as a drop in ghrelin following meal, however, they failed to observe an increase GLP-1 plasma concentrations over a 6-h meal tolerance test[330]. The effect of

British Journal of Nutrition

Table 17. Experimental data supporting the prebiotic effects on body weight and fat mass development

Animal model	Study design	Results	References
Male Wistar rats	10 % FOS or GOS – 50 d	↓ BW gain (NS)	Sakaguchi *et al.*[460]
Male obese Zucker rats	10 % FOS – 7 weeks	↓ BW gain	Daubioul *et al.*[344]
Male Wistar rats	10 % FOS – 3 weeks	Daily BW gain =	Younes *et al.*[449]
Male obese Zucker rats	10 % fructan (ITF_{-MIX}) – 8 weeks	↓ BW gain	Daubioul *et al.*[311]
Male Wistar-Han rats fed either high fructose diet or starch-based diet	10 % FOS – 4 weeks	↓ BW gain (NS)	Busserolles *et al.*[332]
Male Wistar rats	10 % FOS or FOS + inulin or inulin alone – 3 weeks	↓ BW gain (NS) ↓ EAT for FOS and inulin	Cani *et al.*[317]
Male Wistar rats fed a HF–HC diet	Pretreatment with standard diet or FOS-enriched (10 %) standard diet for 35 d followed by 15 d of HF-HC diet with or without FOS (10 %)	↓ BW gain ↓ EAT	Cani *et al.*[334]
Male Wistar rats	5 % high and low-molecular inulin *v.* 5 % cellulose– 4 weeks	BW gain =	Juskiewicz *et al.*[461]
Male C57Bl/6J mice fed a HF– carbohydrate free diet	10 % FOS – 4 weeks	↓ BW gain ↓ EAT	Cani *et al.*[320]
Male Wistar rats	5 % or 10 % inulin – 4weeks	↓ final BW (NS)	Zdunczyk *et al.*[462]
Male C57Bl/6J mice fed a HF–carbohydrate free diet	10 % FOS – 4 weeks	↓ BW gain ↓ EAT	Delmee *et al.*[335]
Male C57Bl/6J mice fed a HF–HC diet	10 % FOS – 4 weeks	↓ BW gain (NS) EAT =	
Male Wistar rats fed a HF and HC diet	5 % inulin – 8 weeks	↓ final BW	Sugatani *et al.*[463]
Male Wistar rats	10 % FOS – 4 weeks	↓ BW gain ↓ EAT, IAT, VAT	Cani *et al.*[323]
Male C57Bl/6J mice fed a HF–carbohydrate free diet	10 % FOS – 14 weeks	↓ BW gain ↓ EAT, VAT, SAT	Cani *et al.*[312]
Male obese (cp/cp) James C Russell corpulent rats	9 % inulin – 3 weeks	↓ final BW	Reimer *et al.*[321]
Male C57Bl/6J mice	10 % FOS or inulin-type fructans from Agavae – 5 weeks	↓ BW gain ↓ EAT for fructans from Agave tequilana Gto	Urias-Silvas *et al.*[319]
Female Sprague–Dawley rats	5 % inulin + 5 % cellulose *v.* 10 % cellulose – 4 and 8 weeks	↓ BW gain (NS) ↓ whole body fat mass	Jamieson *et al.*[442]
Male obese ob/ob mice	10 % FOS – 5 weeks	↓ EAT, VAT, SAT	Cani *et al.*[312]

FOS, fructo-oligosaccharides; GOS, galacto-oligosaccharides; BW, body weight; HF, high fat; HC, high carbohydrate; EAT, epididymal adipose tissue; IAT, inguinal adipose tissue; VAT, visceral adipose tissue; SAT, subcutaneous adipose tissue; wk, weeks.

acute treatment with 8 g ITF with or without 0·3 g β-glucans over 2 d did not have any effect on appetite, satiety or food intake, suggesting that an adaptative process (linked to the modulation of gut microbiota?) may be necessary to observe the satietogenic effect of prebiotics[331].

Prebiotic effects and glucose homeostasis

Animals. An improvement of glucose homaeostasis by ingredients showing a prebiotic effect has been observed in rats or mice in several nutritional, genetic or toxic conditions leading to glucose intolerance and/or diabetes: high-fructose[332] or high-fat diet-fed animals[320,333–335], genetically obese or diabetic mice[312], streptozotocin-induced diabetic rats[336]. The improvement of glycaemic response can be explained on either increasing insulin secretion or insulin sensitivity, depending on the model.

In streptozotocin-treated rats, characterised by a diabetes linked to the destruction of β-cells, prebiotics feeding improves glucose tolerance and increases plasma insulin. In this model, the treatment with ITF allows a partial restoration of pancreatic insulin and β-cells mass. Endogenous GLP-1 production is increased in diabetic rats received ITF as compared to other groups[336]. This GLP-1 overproduction might be part of the protective effect of dietary ITF because:

(1) It has been shown that in diabetes prone-BB rats that are characterised by a default of production of gut peptides, no effect of ITF was shown[337];
(2) GLP-1 has been shown to increase β-cells differentiation; and
(3) that beneficial effect of ITF is not due to the satietogenic effect alone, since the improvement of glucose tolerance and pancreatic β-cell mass observed in streptozotocin-ITF fed rats is not reproduced through the sole pair-feeding restriction.

It is likely that a more direct effect of GLP-1 could be due to its effect on pancreatic β-cells differentiation.

ITF improve hepatic insulin sensitivity and increase plasma insulin in diet-induced diabetes and obesity (high-fat fed mice)[320]. As shown by an increase in food intake and body mass, genetic and pharmacological disruption of the GLP-1 receptor action abolished the beneficial effect of the treatment on both glucose tolerance and insulin sensitivity, suggesting a key role for this gut peptide[320]. In diet-induced obese dogs, 1 % short-chain fructans given in the diet for 6 weeks resulted in a decrease in insulin resistance assessed by euglycaemic/hyperinsulinaemic clamp, and these effects occurred in parallel with changes in the expression of genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism in the adipose tissue[338].

Altogether, these data support the relevance of the prebiotic modulation of gut microbiota by using dietary in the control of glucose homeostasis in different models of diabetes. The implication of gut peptides may be involved in this effect, however, other metabolic mechanisms, such as a decrease in inflammatory tone, could also contribute to the improvement of glucose homeostasis upon treatment with ingredients showing a prebiotic effect (see later).

Human studies. Several papers have been published, which have focused on the influence of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect on glucose homeostasis in human subjects. Luo *et al.*[339] have shown that 20 g short-chain fructans given for 4 weeks to healthy subjects decreased basal hepatic glucose production, but had no detectable effect on insulin-stimulated glucose metabolism. They tested the same approach in type 2 diabetic patients but no significant modification of glucose homeostasis (plasma glucose level, hepatic glucose production) occurred in the prebiotics-treated patients[340]. In a similar study conducted in hypercholesterolaemic patients, prebiotics (short-chain fructans) treatment reduced the postprandial insulin response, but the clinical relevance of this effect remains unclear[341]. In a recent study, a 2-week supplementation with 16 g/d ITF, compared with the same amount of maltodextrin used as placebo, increased GLP-1 production and lessen the postprandial glucose response after a standardised breakfast[327].

Prebiotic effects and lipid homeostasis, including steatosis and hepatic alterations

Animal studies. Ingredients showing a prebiotic effect are able to modulate hepatic lipid metabolism in rats or hamsters, resulting in changes in either TAG accumulation in the liver (steatosis) or serum lipids[342]. In non-obese rats and/or hamsters fed a high carbohydrate diet, a decrease in hepatic and serum TAG was observed, when ITF were added to the diet at concentrations ranging from 2·5 to 10 % for several weeks (from 2 to 12 weeks)[343]. In animals, reduced triglyceridaemia or steatosis is often linked to a decrease in *de novo* lipogenesis in the liver[343]. In rats fed a lipid-rich diet containing fructans, a decrease in triglyceridaemia also occurs without any protective effect on hepatic TAG accumulation and lipogenesis, suggesting a possible peripheral mode of action[333]. By contrast, in obese Zucker rats, dietary supplementation with ITF lessens hepatic steatosis, with no effect on postprandial triglyceridaemia when added to the standard diet[344]. This effect is likely to be mainly of a lower availability of NEFA coming from adipose tissue, since fat mass and body weight are decreased by the treatment. In obese dogs, a 6 weeks treatment with short-chain fructans was able to increase uncoupling protein 2 and carnitine palmitoyltransferase 1 expression in the adipose tissue, thereby suggesting a higher substrate oxidation in adipocyte that occurred without any significant change in triglyceridemia[338].

The decrease in TAG synthesis and accumulation of dietary prebiotics compounds could be linked to several events. First, a decrease in glycaemia could be part of the process, since glucose (together with insulin) is a driver of lipogenesis. Secondly, the SCFA produced through the fermentation process could play a role in the regulation of lipid metabolism. The high proportion of propionate produced in the caecum, which reaches the liver through the portal vein, is, at least in animals, a key event in explaining a lower hepatic TAG synthesis[345,346]. Interestingly, acetate, when supplied in the diet of diabetic mice at a dose of 0·5 % for 8 weeks, activates AMPkinase in the liver, a phenomenon that is related to the inhibition of *de novo* lipogenesis[347]. The incubation of rat hepatocytes with acetate (0·2 mM) activates AMPkinase and decreases sterol response element binding protein-1c expression, two factors clearly implicated in the regulation of lipogenesis. Therefore, the classical deleterious role attributed to acetate as a precursor of lipogenesis might be modulated taking into account its regulatory effect on key molecular factors involved in fatty acid synthesis in the liver.

Several studies have also reported a decrease in total serum cholesterol after dietary supplementation with inulin (10 %) in mice or rats[343,348–351]. Experiments in apoE-deficient mice support the fact that dietary inulin (mainly long-chain inulin) significantly lowers total cholesterol levels by about one third. This is accompanied by a significant decrease in the hepatic cholesterol content. The authors suggest that the decrease in serum cholesterol could reflect a decrease in TAG-rich lipoproteins which are also rich in cholesterol in apo-E deficient animals[350].

With regard to the hypocholesterolaemic effect of prebiotics, several mechanisms have been proposed. The modulation of the intestinal metabolism of bile acids, (e.g. steroid-binding properties) may be involved, which are independent of the fermentation of the ingredient showing a prebiotic effect in the lower intestinal tract[343,352,353]. A recent study, performed in rats supplemented with GOS/FOS, did not support the involvement of changes in the bile salt pool size and kinetics in the modulation of lipid and energy metabolism[354].

Human data. Reported effects of prebiotics on circulating blood lipids in both normo- and moderately hyperlipidaemic human subjects are variable[355]. Both positive and negative outcomes have been obtained from a small number of well-designed human studies, devoted to analyse the effect of dietary supplementation with fructans (doses ranging from 8 to 20 g/d) exhibiting prebiotic properties. The effect of ITF supplementation on lipogenesis has been shown in human volunteers: the hepatic capacity of TAG synthesis is lowered by this ingredients showing a prebiotic effect as previously shown in rats[356]. In patients with non-alcoholic steatohepatitis, short-chain ITF supplementation leads to a decrease in serum activity of amino-transferases, suggesting an improvement of hepatic alterations in those patients[357], thereby suggesting that a prebiotic approach could be useful in the management of hepatic disease associated with obesity.

Prebiotic effects and obesity-associated inflammation. Obesity and insulin resistance are associated with a low-grade inflammation (for review, see Cani & Delzenne[310,358]). The gut microbiota takes part of this component of the metabolic disorder associated with obesity. In fact, LPS has been considered to be the triggering factor for the early development of inflammation and metabolic diseases[359]. The excessive intake in dietary fat facilitates the absorption of highly pro-inflammatory bacterial LPS from the gut, thereby increasing plasma LPS level leading to 'metabolic endotoxemia'[359]. Interestingly, several reports have shown that obesity induced following dietary manipulations (high-fat feeding)[359–362] or genetic deletion (leptin-deficient models)[363] is characterised by changes in gut microbiota towards a decreased number of bifidobacteria. Importantly, this group of bacteria has been shown to reduce intestinal LPS levels in mice and to improve the mucosal barrier function[364–367]. Feeding mice with ITF-$_{\text{av3-4}}$ restores the number of intestinal bifidobacteria and reduces the impact of high-fat diet induced-metabolic endotoxaemia and inflammatory disorders[320,361]. With regard to the possible mechanism of action of these ingredients, data obtained in obese ob/ob mice showed that they increase the production of a gut peptide secreted by endocrine cells of the colon, namely GLP-2, which plays a role on the intestinal tissue itself, by restoring tight junction protein expression and repartition, and thereby decreasing gut permeability, endotoxemia, and associated metabolic disorders[312].

The relevance of endotoxemia on metabolic disorders due to fat excess, and diabetes in human is supported by several recent studies. However, the impact of the prebiotic approach on endotoxemia and inflammation in obese and diabetic patients has not yet been demonstrated. This area of research may be very interesting and important, since inflammation is considered as an important event that drives a lot series of metabolic alterations linked to obesity (CVD, non-alcoholic steato hepatitis, insulin resistance, etc.).

Relation between prebiotic effects and improvement of obesity and associated disorders

Relative specificity of prebiotics effects v. other 'dietary fibres' on physiological targets regulating appetite and metabolic disorders. It has been proposed before that the secretion of gut peptides might be part of the effects of fermentable carbohydrates with prebiotics properties. Some of those effect can also been driven by dietary compounds for which a prebiotic effect has not yet been shown. Resistant starch has also been shown to increase GLP-1 and PYY in several rodent studies, with consequences on fat mass development[368,369].

An increase in the postprandial response of GLP-1 was observed after ingestion of β-glucan-rich rye bread by healthy subjects[370]. The administration of guar gum (together with galactose) promoted the increase in GLP-1 in women, and this was related to a significant increase in satiety[371]. An increase in the level of non-ndigestible carbohydrates (barley-kernel bread) in the evening meal resulted in an increase in satiety and in a decrease glucose response following breakfast, an event that can be linked to an increase in GLP-1, to the extent of fermentation (assessed through the H breath test) and which is related to a lower proinflammatory cytokine level (IL6)[372].

These data suggest that some effect described for 'well-established' prebiotics can also be the attribute of other non-digestible/fermentable carbohydrates. The relevance of the gut microbiota composition and activity in this process remains poorly explored. In that view, recent data suggest that butyrate is able to improve insulin sensitivity and energy expenditure in rodents[373] thereby supporting the hypothesis that besides the changes in the composition of the microbiota, the gut microbiota and the pattern of fermentation could also be important to take into account.

What is the contribution of changes in gut microbiota composition in the improvement of metabolic alterations by prebiotics? A recent study has shown, for the first time in human subjects, that differences in specific 'healthy' bacteria in gut microbiota may precede the development of becoming overweight[374]. The authors found that *Bifidobacterium* spp. during the first year of life was higher in number in children who exhibited a normal weight at 7 years than in children becoming overweight. More importantly, and according to the results obtained in experimental models, they found that the faecal numbers of *Staphylococcus aureus* were lower in children remaining normal weight than in children becoming overweight. These results unequivocally imply that the gut microbiota profile

in favour of a higher number bifidobacteria and a lower number of *S. aureus* in infancy may provide protection against overweight and obesity development. The authors proposed that *S. aureus* may act as a trigger of low-grade inflammation[375], contributing to the development of obesity. Experimental data in mice suggest that the promotion of bifidobacteria by the intake of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect – may be helpful *per se*. On the one hand, intervention studies relating concomitantly the changes in gut microbiota composition (and activity), and, on the other hand, behavioural (appetite) or physiological changes are therefore necessary to proof the relevance of the gut microbial changes in the effects.

Methodological aspects

Key questions remain open concerning the adequacy of the experimental protocol to estimate the relevance of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect in the management of obesity and associated disorders. The choice of a placebo is rather difficult, and the type of placebo compounds is different when experiments are conducted in animals or in human subjects. There may also be differences when considering end points such as fat mass development or satiety, or glucose/lipid homeostasis.

In animal studies, the authors often add ingredients showing a prebiotic effect at a relatively high dose (1–10 % wt/wt in the diet) to compare the data obtained in animals receiving the basal diet alone. The interpretation of results would then require the difference in energy/nutrients intake and/or an experimental group with the same intake of energy upon the treatment (pair-fed animals) to be taken into account. Other authors propose to replace the amount of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect by a non-digestible–non fermentable carbohydrate such as microcrystalline cellulose as placebo. This allows a comparison based on differential fermentation properties.

For human studies, the dose of ingredients showing a prebiotic effect is much lower (from 1 to 30 g/d). The organoleptic and physico-chemical properties of the placebo are very important to take into account. Several placebos are proposed in the literature, e.g. a digestible carbohydrate, such as maltodextrin – i.e. alone[324,327], or in combination with aspartame[341] – or saccharose[339,340], dietary fibres such as oat fibre[331].

The choice of the adequate placebo is really difficult and will depend on the end point and duration of the treatment. When estimating the influence on glucose/lipid metabolism, one must consider a placebo that does not change postprandial glucose level or has a minor impact as lipogenic substrate, for example.

For studies aiming at controlling appetite and energy, one has to choose an adequate placebo which does not exert an effect *per se.* When estimating a long-term effect on body weight composition, the consequence of placebo treatment on global energy intake must be taken into account.

There are, therefore, several possibilities and the interpretation and discussion of the results might also take into account the differences that could be due to the placebo effect in a specific context.

Conclusions and future trends

Collectively, these studies provide support for the beneficial effect of prebiotics on energy homeostasis and body weight gain. Only a few human studies are available to date, but some of them support a role of gut peptide modulation by ingredients showing a prebiotic effect as a potential mechanism occurring in the gut, and appetite regulation. The question of the relevance of gut microbiota modulation in these effects remains unexplored in most of the studies performed in human subjects. In mice, an inverse relationship has been established between the level of faecal bifidobacteria and some features of the metabolic alterations linked to obesity (endotoxemia, fat mass, glucose intolerance). Some other non-digestible carbohydrates or dietary fibres (i.e. resistant starch, insoluble fibre form barley) – for which prebiotic effect has not yet been established – would be able to modulate gut peptides production with consequences on appetite, inflammation and other components of the metabolic syndrome. The analysis of the gut microbiota changes will be crucial in further research and clinical approach, in order to clearly relate those changes with the improvement of metabolic alterations of the host. This will be the way to propose a 'targeted approach in the modulation of gut microbiota by ingredients showing a prebiotic effect' as relevant in the context of obesity.

Conclusion and perspectives

Which data to support the hypothesis of a causal relationship between a prebiotic effect and health effects/benefits?

The author of this section is Professor Marcel B. Roberfroid. A prebiotic effect exists and is now a well-established scientific fact. A large number of human intervention studies have demonstrated that dietary consumption of food products/ingredients/supplements results in statistically significant changes in the composition of the faecal (and in some cases, the mucosal) gut microbiota. Most of the available data concern the selective stimulation of bifidobacteria (but also lactobacilli). Other purportedly beneficial genera such as *Roseburia* and *Eubacterium* may be more fully investigated in the future – although further evidence of their beneficial effects is required. Some, but not all, studies have reported a reduction in the concentration of pathogenic bacteria such as clostridia and salmonella. The more data are accumulating, the more it will be recognised that such changes in the composition of the faecal microbiota, especially increase in bifidobacteria can be regarded as a marker of intestinal health. This is already supported by scientific publications[376–380].

Research on the impact of the prebiotic effect on the activity (metabolic, regulatory and signalling) of the microbiota is ongoing and appropriate relevant methodologies are being developed, validated and applied.

(1) Results from experimental models but also in a few human studies, food products/ingredients/supplements with a demonstrated prebiotic effect have been shown to modulate certain immunological biomarkers and affect activity(ies) of the immune system. Whether changes in immune function markers or immune-health

benefits are related to a prebiotic-induced change in the composition of the gut microbiota is an area for future investigation. While several studies report changes in the faecal microbial composition alongside changes in immune markers, only one study sofar has correlated these findings. Although these observations make the link between immuno-modulation and microbiota changes likely, convincing evidence needs to be established by further studies showing clear correlations between parameters of immune function and changes in the microbiota. Although a *causal* relationship is virtually impossible to establish in human subjects, current plausible hypotheses and future correlative findings will help to establish the correlation between prebiotic modulation of the intestinal microbiota and changes in immune function.

(2) The effect of breast-feeding on infant gut microbiota composition is well established and mother's milk is known to contain a complex mixture oligosaccharides with prebiotic (especially bifidogenic) effects, therefore, infant formulae/foods have been supplemented with prebiotics. Confirming the studies in adults, it has been demonstrated that such supplementation increases the faecal concentration of bifidobacteria. This concomitantly improves stool quality (soft and loose stools), reduces the risk of gastro-enteritis, improves general well-being and reduces the frequency of atopic eczema. It is plausible that these effects were microbiota-induced changes.

(3) Changes in the gut microbiota composition are classically considered as one of the many factors involved in the pathogenesis of either IBD or IBS. The use of particular food products/ingredients/supplements with prebiotic effects has thus been tested in clinical trials with the objective to improve the well-being of patients with such disease states. Promising beneficial effects have been demonstrated in some but still preliminary studies with changes in gut microbiota composition (especially increase in bifidobacteria concentration) being associated. Again, it is feasible to conclude that the mechanism of these effects is linked to the prebiotic effect.

(4) Colon cancer is another pathology for which a possible role of gut microbiota composition has been hypothesised. Numerous experimental studies in mice and rats have reported reduction in incidence of tumours and cancers after feeding specific food products/ingredients/supplements with prebiotic effects. Some of these studies (including one human trial) have also reported that, in such conditions, gut microbiota composition was modified (especially due to increased concentration of bifidobacteria), however, role of such changes in the eventual anti-cancer effect of these specific food products/ingredients/supplements remains to be definitively proven.

(5) Dietary intake of particular food products/ingredients/supplements with a prebiotic effect has been shown, especially in adolescents, but also tentatively in postmenopausal women to increase Ca absorption as well as bone Ca accretion and BMD. No correlation has been reported between such a beneficial effect and changes in gut microbiota composition – although this is plausible but not exclusive. However, other food products/ingredients/supplements that do not show prebiotic effect (e.g. lactose, miscellaneous dietary fibres) have also been reported to exert similar effects. Moreover, a study in adolescents revealed the existence of a genetic component in response (with one-third of non-responders) to increased Ca absorption. It is thus likely that improved Ca absorption is not uniquely caused by changes in gut microbiota composition and might be a consequence of a combination of different effects. Preliminary data have reported, mainly in experimental models, that specific food products/ingredients/supplements with prebiotic effects could also increase the absorption of other minerals (e.g. Mg, Fe). More research is needed to confirm these data and, eventually, to demonstrate if their mechanism involves changes in gut microbiota composition.

(6) Recent data, both from experimental models and from human studies, support the beneficial effects of particular food products/ingredients/supplements with prebiotic properties on energy homeostasis, satiety regulation and body weight gain. Together with data that correlate obesity with differences in gut microbiota composition, these studies have led to hypothesise that gut microbiota composition (especially the number of bifidobacteria) may contribute to modulate metabolic processes associated with syndrome X, especially obesity and diabetes type 2. In a study on the mechanism of action of a prebiotic food ingredient in reducing obesity, an inverse correlation between bifidobacteria faecal concentration, and gut permeability and metabolic endotoxemia (plasmatic LPS), has been reported. However, non-prebiotic dietary fibres have also shown some similar effects, the question of the specific benefits that can specifically be attributed to prebiotic effects remains open.

(7) By reference to the present knowledge (mostly based on the data obtained with the various ITFs and the GOS) on the prebiotic effect and its possible multiple physiological consequences, it appears likely that different compounds (food ingredients or food supplements) including chemically identical compounds with e.g. different chain lengths (like in the ITF group) will have:

   (a) different prebiotic effects will influence differently the composition of the microflora in the different segments of the intestine, especially in the large bowel;
   (b) different physiological effects and thus will not affect similarly the same functions (as this is clearly the case for Ca absorption, a function that is more influenced by ITF-$_{MIX}$ than by the different ITFs given separately.

Any effect of one particular compound with a prebiotic effect can never be generalised to another compound, unless this has been scientifically substantiated for each particular food ingredient/supplement[78].

The majority of successful human trials on the prebiotic effects show significantly increased intestinal levels of bifidobacteria. Often, these are associated with improvement in well-characterised and accepted markers of health as shown by the extensive and growing body of evidence,

outlined in this report. This strongly associates prebiotic-induced increases in numbers of bifidobacteria in the gut with a range of GI and systemic health benefits. Although it could be argued that these studies alone do not necessarily indicate causality, when considered with the results of trials in human subjects and animals supplemented with live bifidobacteria they do indeed provide compelling evidence that the relationship between intestinal bifidobacteria and health might well be causal[376–380].

Even so, key questions still remain such as

(1) Which effect(s) (see Table 2) is/are causally linked to selective change(s) in gut microbiota composition?
(2) Which of the physiological and/or pathophysiological well-being and health benefits are directly linked with a particular composition of the gut microbiota or (a) selective change(s) therein?
(3) Which, among the physiological and/or pathophysiological well-being and health benefits, is (are) not linked to a particular composition of the gut microbiota or (a) selective change(s) therein but is (are) the consequence(s) of other mechanism(s) of the product claimed to have a prebiotic effect?
(4) Which protocol(s) is (are) now validated to demonstrate change(s) in microbiota composition?
(5) Which protocol(s) and methodology(ies) is (are) now available and validated to demonstrate links between a particular composition of the gut microbiota or a selective change therein and a particular physiological and/or pathophysiological well-being and health benefit?

Over the last two decades, data have and continue to accumulate improving our knowledge of the gut microbiota composition but also, through the metabonomic approaches, gut microbiota activities. It has convincingly demonstrated that particular food products/ingredients/supplements can, upon feeding, selectively modulate that composition and possibly these activities. Dietary consumption of some of these specific food products/ingredients/supplements has also been reported to exert a series of beneficial health effects that may justify improved function and/or reduction of disease risk claims[21,381]. A causal relationship between the induced change(s) in gut microbiota composition and/or activity(ies) and these health effects is more than plausible – given our knowledge that prebiotics are known to be specifically metabolised by the gut microbiota. The more we understand the complexity of the gut microbiota, its interactions with the gut epithelium, its roles in modulating epithelial cell differentiation and epithelial cell functions and, beyond, in the whole body, the more we will be in a position to recommend these food ingredients for their health-promoting values. It is becoming more and more clear that gut microbiota plays key roles in modulating human/animal physiology even far beyond the GI tract. Specific food products/ingredients/supplements with prebiotic properties are unique tools to study such effects but also offer unique opportunity to develop new functional foods/food ingredients/food supplements to improve host health. One major contribution of this review article summarising the state of the art in the research on the metabolic and health effects of these compounds is to recommend where research efforts should be concentrated to improve understanding of the activities and the physiological roles of the gut microbiota and in particular the importance of its qualitative composition and the consequences of that modulation. Through this, it should be possible to better address the continuing burden of gastro-intestinally mediated disorders. Importantly, tools exist to underpin this with mechanistic explanations of effect leading to effective hypothesis-driven research.

Acknowledgements

The authors thank Dr Patrice Lebecque (Unité de Nutrition Humaine, UMR1019, INRA Clermont-Ferrand/Theix) for his help in writing the section on mineral absorption and Dr Sarah Schenker who kindly reviewed the English consistency of the present paper. The authors also thank Professor Salminen and its co-authors for enabling us reproducing the table from the following article: S. Salminen, C. Bouley, M. -C. Boutron, J. H. Cummings, A. Franck, G. R. G., E. Isolauri, M.-C. Moreau, M. R. and I. R., 'Functional food science and gastrointestinal physiology and function', *Br J Nutr* **80**(Suppl. 1), S147–S171, (1998). This work was commissioned by the Prebiotics Task Force of the European branch of the International Life Sciences Institute (ILSI Europe). Industry members of this task force are Cargill, Cereals Partner Worldwide, Clasado, Colloïdes Naturels International, Cosucra Groupe Warcoing, Danone, Danisco, Friesland Campina, Kellogg Europe, Kraft Foods, Mead Johnson Nutrition, Puratos, Roquette Frères, Sensus, Südzucker/BENEO Group, Syral, Tate & Lyle, Ulker Bisküvi and Unilever. M. R., G. R. G., L. H., A. L. M. C., R. R., I. R., B. W., H. S., F. G., F. R., K. W., N. M. D., P. D. C. and A. M. N. have no conflict of interest to declare. DW is an employee of Unilever, BS is an employee of Danone, FR is an employee of Syral, AM is an employee of ILSI Europe. The team of VC, MJD, YW and LL is doing collaborative research with Cosucra Groupe Warcoing. Prof. Dr. med. habil. Günther Boehm is also an employee of Danone Research, Center for Specialised Nutrition, Friedrichsdorf, Germany. For further information about ILSI Europe, please call +32 2 771 00 14 or email: info@ilsieurope.be. The opinions expressed herein are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the views of ILSI Europe.

References

1. Yazawa K, Imai K & Tamura Z (1978) Oligosaccharides and polysaccharides specifically utilizable by bifidobacteria. *Chem Pharm Bull (Tokyo)* **26**, 3306–3311.
2. Mitsuoka T, Hidaka H & Eida T (1987) Effect of fructo-oligosaccharides on intestinal microflora. *Nahrung* **31**, 427–436.
3. Gibson GR & Roberfroid MB (1995) Dietary modulation of the human colonic microbiota – introducing the concept of prebiotics. *J Nutr* **125**, 1401–1412.
4. Gibson GR, Probert HM, Van Loo J, *et al.* (2004) Dietary modulation of the human colonic microbiota: updating the concept of prebiotics. *Nutr Res Rev* **17**, 259–275.
5. Suau A, Bonnet R, Sutren M, *et al.* (1999) Direct analysis of genes encoding 16S rRNA from complex communities reveals many novel molecular species within the human gut. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **65**, 4799–4807.
6. Harmsen HJ, Elfferich P, Schut P, *et al.* (1999) A 16S rRNA-targeted probe for detection of lactobacilli and enterococci in

British Journal of Nutrition

fecal samples by fluorescent *in situ* hybridization. *Microb Ecol Health Dis* **11**, 3–12.
7. Harmsen HJ, Wildeboer-Veloo AC, Grijpstra J, *et al.* (2000) Development of 16S rRNA-based probes for the Coriobacterium group and the Atopobium cluster and their application for enumeration of Coriobacteriaceae in human feces from volunteers of different age groups. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **66**, 4523–4527.
8. Harmsen HJ, Raangs GC, He T, *et al.* (2002) Extensive set of 16S rRNA-based probes for detection of bacteria in human feces. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **68**, 2982–2990.
9. Zoetendal EG, Akkermans AD & de Vos WM (1998) Temperature gradient gel electrophoresis analysis of 16S rRNA from human fecal samples reveals stable and host-specific communities of active bacteria. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **64**, 3854–3859.
10. Zoetendal EG, Akkermans AD, Akkermans-van Vliet WM, *et al.* (2001) The host genotype affects the bacterial community in the human gastrointestinal tract. *Microb Ecol Health Dis* **13**, 129–134.
11. Zoetendal EG, von Wright A, Vilpponen-Salmela T, *et al.* (2002) Mucosa-associated bacteria in the human gastrointestinal tract are uniformly distributed along the colon and differ from the community recovered from feces. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **68**, 3401–3407.
12. Wang X, Heazlewood SP, Krause DO, *et al.* (2003) Molecular characterization of the microbial species that colonize human ileal and colonic mucosa by using 16S rDNA sequence analysis. *J Appl Microbiol* **95**, 508–520.
13. Wang M, Ahrne S, Jeppsson B, *et al.* (2005) Comparison of bacterial diversity along the human intestinal tract by direct cloning and sequencing of 16S rRNA genes. *FEMS Microbiol Ecol* **54**, 219–231.
14. Eckburg PB, Bik EM, Bernstein CN, *et al.* (2005) Diversity of the human intestinal microbial flora. *Science* **308**, 1635–1638.
15. Hayashi H, Takahashi R, Nishi T, *et al.* (2005) Molecular analysis of jejunal, ileal, caecal and recto-sigmoidal human colonic microbiota using 16S rRNA gene libraries and terminal restriction fragment length polymorphism. *J Med Microbiol* **54**, 1093–1101.
16. Green GL, Brostoff J, Hudspith B, *et al.* (2006) Molecular characterization of the bacteria adherent to human colorectal mucosa. *J Appl Microbiol* **100**, 460–469.
17. Roberfroid M & Gibson GR (2002) Nutritional and health benefits of inulin and oligofructose. *Br J Nutr* **87**, S139–S311.
18. Roberfroid M & Robertson D (2005) Effects of inulin and oligofructose on health and well-being. *Br J Nutr* **93**, S1–S168.
19. Roberfroid M & Buddington RK (2007) Inulin and oligofructose: proven health benefits and claims. *J Nutr* **137**, S2489–S2597.
20. Gibson GR & Roberfroid M (2008) *Handbook of Prebiotics*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
21. Cummings JH, Antoine JM, Azpiroz F, *et al.* (2004) PASSCLAIM – gut health and immunity. *Eur J Nutr* **43**, Suppl. 2, II118–II173.
22. Wilson KH & Blitchington RB (1996) Human colonic biota studied by ribosomal DNA sequence analysis. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **62**, 2273–2278.
23. Kerckhoffs APM, Samson M, van Berge Henegouwen GP, *et al.* (2006) Sampling microbiota in the human gastrointestinal tract. In *Gastrointestinal Microbiology*, pp. 25–50 [AC Ouwehand and EE Vaughan, editors]. New York: Taylor & Francis Ltd.
24. O'Connor EB, Barrett E, Fitzgerald G, *et al.* (2005) Production of vitamins, exopolysaccharides and bacteriocins by probiotic bacteria. In *Probiotic Dairy Products*, pp. 167–194 [AY Tamine, editor]. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing Ltd.
25. O'May GA, Reynolds N, Smith AR, *et al.* (2005) Effect of pH and antibiotics on microbial overgrowth in the stomachs and duodena of patients undergoing percutaneous endoscopic gastromy feeding. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **71**, 3059–3065.
26. Reuter G (2001) The *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacterium* microflora of the human intestine: composition and succession. *Curr Issues Intest Microbiol* **2**, 43–53.
27. O'May GA, Reynolds N & Macfarlane GT (2005) Effect of pH on an *in vitro* model of gastric microbiota in enteral nutrition patients. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **71**, 4777–4783.
28. Macfarlane GT, Macfarlane S & Gibson GR (1998) Validation of a three-stage compound continuous culture system for investigating the effect of retention time on the ecology and metabolism of bacteria in the human colon. *Microb Ecol* **35**, 180–187.
29. Duncan SH, Aminov RI, Scott KP, *et al.* (2006) Proposal of *Roseburia faecis* sp. nov., *Roseburia hominis* sp. nov. and *Roseburia inulinivorans* sp. nov., based on isolates from human faeces. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* **56**, 2437–2441.
30. Derrien M, Vaughan EE, Plugge CM, *et al.* (2004) *Akkermansia muciniphila* gen. nov., sp. nov., a human intestinal mucin-degrading bacterium. *Int J Syst Evol Microbiol* **54**, 1469–1476.
31. Walker AW, Duncan SH, William Leitch EC, *et al.* (2005) pH and peptide supply can radically alter bacterial populations and short-chain fatty acid ratios within microbial communities from the human colon. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **71**, 3692–3700.
32. Blaut M, Collins MD, Welling GW, *et al.* (2002) Molecular biological methods for studying the gut microbiota: the EU human gut flora project. *Br J Nutr* **87**, Suppl. 2, S203–S211.
33. Manichanh C, Rigottier-Gois L, Bonnaud E, *et al.* (2006) Reduced diversity of faecal microbiota in Crohn's disease revealed by a metagenomic approach. *Gut* **55**, 205–211.
34. Stewart JA, Chadwick VS & Murray A (2005) Investigations into the influence of host genetics on the predominant eubacteria in the faecal microflora of children. *J Med Microbiol* **54**, 1239–1242.
35. Cherbut C (2003) Motor effects of short-chain fatty acids and lactate in the gastrointestinal tract. *Proc Nutr Soc* **62**, 95–99.
36. Flint HJ, Bayer EA, Rincon MT, *et al.* (2008) Polysaccharide utilization by gut bacteria: potential for new insights from genomic analysis. *Nat Rev Microbiol* **6**, 121–131.
37. Cummings JH & Macfarlane GT (1991) The control and consequences of bacterial fermentation in the human colon. *J Appl Bacteriol* **70**, 443–459.
38. Rowland IR, Mallett AK & Wise A (1985) The effect of diet on the mammalian gut flora and its metabolic activities. *Crit Rev Toxicol* **16**, 31–103.
39. Topping DL & Clifton PM (2001) Short-chain fatty acids and human colonic function: roles of resistant starch and nonstarch polysaccharides. *Physiol Rev* **81**, 1031–1064.
40. Lupton J (2004) Microbial degradation products influence colon cancer risk: the butyrate controversy. *J Nutr* **134**, 479–482.
41. Macfarlane GT, Gibson GR & Cummings JH (1992) Comparison of fermentation reactions in different regions of the human colon. *J Appl Bacteriol* **72**, 57–64.
42. Bingham SA, Pett S & Day KC (1990) NSP intake of a representative sample of British adults. *J Hum Nutr Diet* **3**, 339–344.
43. Gray J (2006) *Dietary Fibre: Definition, Analysis, Physiology and Health*. Brussels: International Life Sciences Institute.
44. Englyst HN & Macfarlane GT (1986) Breakdown of resistant and readily digestible starch by human gut bacteria. *J Sci Food Agric* **37**, 699–706.

British Journal of Nutrition

45. Hudson M & Marsh PD (1995) Carbohydrate metabolism in the colon. In *Human Colonic Bacteria: Role in Nutrition, Physiology and Pathology*, pp. 61–72 [GR Gibson and GT Macfarlane, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
46. Scientific Opinion of the Panel on Dietetic Products, Nutrition and Allergies on a request from the EC on population reference intakes for carbohydrates and dietary fibre. (2009).
47. Quigley ME & Kelly S (1995) Structure, function, and metabolism of host mucus glycoproteins. In *Human Colonic Bacteria: Role in Nutrition, Physiology and Pathology*, pp. 175–199 [GR Gibson and GT Macfarlane, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
48. Macfarlane S & Macfarlane GT (1995) Proteolysis and amino acid fermentation. In *Human Colonic Bacteria: Role in Nutrition, Physiology and Pathology*, pp. 75–100 [GR Gibson and GT Macfarlane, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
49. Cummings JH (1981) Short chain fatty acids in the human colon. *Gut* **22**, 763–779.
50. Cummings JH (1995) Short chain fatty acids. In *Human Colonic Bacteria: Role in Nutrition, Physiology and Pathology*, pp. 101–130 [GR Gibson and GT Macfarlane, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
51. Flint HJ (2006) Prokaryote diversity in the human GI tract. In *Prokaryotic Diversity: Mechanisms and Significance*, Society for General Microbiology Symposium no. 66, Warwick April 2006, pp. 65–90 [N Logan, H Lappin-Scott and P Oyston, editors]. Cambridge, MA: Cambridge University Press.
52. Levitt MD, Gibson GR & Christl S (1995) Gas metabolism in the large intestine. In *Human Colonic Bacteria: Role in Nutrition, Physiology and Health*, pp. 113–154 [GR Gibson and GT Macfarlane, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
53. Blaut M (2002) Relationship of prebiotics and food to intestinal microflora. *Eur J Nutr* **1**, Suppl. 1, I11–I16.
54. Dass NB, John AK, Bassil AK, *et al.* (2007) The relationship between the effects of short-chain fatty acids on intestinal motility *in vitro* and GPR43 receptor activation. *Neurogastroenterol Motil* **19**, 66–74.
55. Engelhardt W, Busche R, Gros G, *et al.* (1991) Absorption of short-chain fatty acids: mechanisms and regional differences in the large intestine. In *Short-Chain Fatty Acids: Metabolism and Clinical Importance*, pp. 60–62 [JH Cummings, J Rombeau and T Sakata, editors]. Columbus, OH: Ross Laboratories Press.
56. Vogt JA & Wolever TM (2003) Fecal acetate is inversely related to acetate absorption from the human rectum and distal colon. *J Nutr* **133**, 3145–3148.
57. Reshef L, Niv J & Shapiro B (1967) Effect of propionate on lipogenesis in adipose tissue. *J Lipid Res* **8**, 682–687.
58. Siong Y, Miyamoto N, Shibata K, *et al.* (2004) Short-chain fatty acids stimulate leptin production in adipocytes through the G protein-coupled receptor GPR41. *PNAS* **4**, 1045–1050.
59. Williams EA, Coxhead JM & Mathers JC (2003) Anti-cancer effects of butyrate: use of micro-array technology to investigate mechanisms. *Proc Nutr Soc* **62**, 107–115.
60. Scheppach W (1996) Treatment of distal ulcerative colitis with short-chain fatty acid enemas. A placebo-controlled trial. German-Austrian SCFA Study Group. *Dig Dis Sci* **41**, 2254–2259.
61. Tamura Z (1983) Nutriology of bifidobacteria. *Bifidobact Microfl* **2**, 3–16.
62. Hughes SA, Shewry PR, Li L, *et al.* (2007) *In vitro* fermentation by human fecal microflora of wheat arabinoxylans. *J Agric Food Chem* **55**, 4589–4595.
63. Wang X & Gibson GR (1993) Effects of the *in vitro* fermentation of oligofructose and inulin by bacteria growing in the human large intestine. *J Appl Bacteriol* **75**, 373–380.
64. Rycroft CE, Jones MR, Gibson GR, *et al.* (2001) A comparative *in vitro* evaluation of the fermentation properties of prebiotic oligosaccharides. *J Appl Microbiol* **91**, 878–887.
65. Hayakawa K, Mizutani J, Wada K, *et al.* (1990) Effects of soybean oligosaccharides on human faecal flora. *Microbial Ecol Health Dis* **3**, 293–303.
66. Sghir A, Chow JM & Mackie RI (1998) Continuous culture selection of bifidobacteria and lactobacilli from human faecal samples using fructooligosaccharide as selective substrate. *J Appl Microbiol* **85**, 769–777.
67. Gibson GR & Wang X (1994) Enrichment of bifidobacteria from human gut contents by oligofructose using continuous culture. *FEMS Microbiol Lett* **118**, 121–127.
68. Gibson GR & Wang X (1994) Regulatory effects of bifidobacteria on the growth of other colonic bacteria. *J Appl Bacteriol* **77**, 412–420.
69. McBain AJ & Macfarlane GT (1997) Investigations of bifidobacterial ecology and oligosaccharide metabolism in a three-stage compound continuous culture system. *Scand J Gastroenterol Suppl* **222**, 32–40.
70. McBain AJ & Macfarlane GT (2001) Modulation of genotoxic enzyme activities by non-digestible oligosaccharide metabolism in in-vitro human gut bacterial ecosystems. *J Med Microbiol* **50**, 833–842.
71. Wada K, Watabe J, Mizutani J, *et al.* (1992) Effects of soybean oligosaccharides in a beverage on human fecal flora and metabolites. *J Agric Chem Soc Japan* **66**, 127–135.
72. Palframan RJ, Gibson GR & Rastall RA (2002) Effect of pH and dose on the growth of gut bacteria on prebiotic carbohydrates *in vitro*. *Anaerobe* **8**, 287–292.
73. Tzortzis G, Goulas AK, Gee JM, *et al.* (2005) A novel galactooligosaccharide mixture increases the bifidobacterial population numbers in a continuous *in vitro* fermentation system and in the proximal colonic contents of pigs. *In Vivo J Nutr* **135**, 1726–1731.
74. van de Wiele T, Boon N, Possemiers S, *et al.* (2004) Prebiotic effects of chicory inulin in the simulator of the human intestinal microbial ecosystem. *FEMS Microbiol Ecol* **51**, 143–153.
75. van de Wiele T, Boon N, Possemiers S, *et al.* (2007) Inulin-type fructans of longer degree of polymerization exert more pronounced *in vitro* prebiotic effects. *J Appl Microbiol* **102**, 452–460.
76. Minekus M, Smeets-Peeters M, Bernalier A, *et al.* (1999) A computer-controlled system to simulate conditions of the large intestine with peristaltic mixing, water absorption and absorption of fermentation products. *Appl Microbiol Biotechnol* **53**, 108–114.
77. Venema K, van Nuenen MHMC, van den Heuvel EG, *et al.* (2003) The effect of lactulose on the composition of the intestinal microbiota and short-chain fatty acid production in human volunteers and a computercontrolled model of the proximal large intestine. *Microb Ecol Health Dis* **15**, 94–105.
78. Roberfroid M (2005) *Inulin-Type Fructans. Functional Food Ingredients*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
79. Murphy K, Travers P & Walport M (2007) *Janeway's Immunobiology*, 7th ed. New York: Garland Publishing.
80. Albers R, Antoine JM, Bourdet-Sicard R, *et al.* (2005) Markers to measure immunomodulation in human nutrition intervention studies. *Br J Nutr* **94**, 452–481.
81. Wagner RD (2008) Effects of microbiota on GI health: gnotobiotic research. *Gi Microb Regul Immune Sys* **635**, 41–56.
82. Kelly D, King T & Aminov R (2007) Importance of microbial colonization of the gut in early life to the development of immunity. *Mutat Res* **622**, 58–69.
83. Round JL & Mazmanian SK (2009) The gut microbiota shapes intestinal immune responses during health and disease. *Nat Rev Immunol* **9**, 313–323.

British Journal of Nutrition

84. Gaboriau-Routhiau V, Rakotobe S, Lecuyer E, *et al.* (2009) The key role of segmented filamentous bacteria in the coordinated maturation of gut helper T cell responses. *Immunity* **31**, 677–689.
85. Rescigno M, Urbano M, Valzasina B, *et al.* (2001) Dendritic cells express tight junction proteins and penetrate gut epithelial monolayers to sample bacteria. *Nat Immunol* **2**, 361–367.
86. Sanderson IR (2007) Dietary modulation of GALT. *J Nutr* **137**, 2557S–2562S.
87. Artis D (2008) Epithelial-cell recognition of commensal bacteria and maintenance of immune homeostasis in the gut. *Nat Rev Immunol* **8**, 411–420.
88. Medzhitov R (2007) Recognition of microorganisms and activation of the immune response. *Nature* **449**, 819–826.
89. Vance RE, Isberg RR & Portnoy DA (2009) Patterns of pathogenesis: discrimination of pathogenic and nonpathogenic microbes by the innate immune system. *Cell Host Microbe* **6**, 10–21.
90. Rakoff-Nahoum S, Paglino J, Eslami-Varzaneh F, *et al.* (2004) Recognition of commensal microflora by toll-like receptors is required for intestinal homeostasis. *Cell* **118**, 229–241.
91. Nilsson NE, Kotarsky K, Owman C, *et al.* (2003) Identification of a free fatty acid receptor, FFA2R, expressed on leukocytes and activated by short-chain fatty acids. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* **303**, 1047–1052.
92. Le Poul E, Loison C, Struyf S, *et al.* (2003) Functional characterization of human receptors for short chain fatty acids and their role in polymorphonuclear cell activation. *J Biol Chem* **278**, 25481–25489.
93. Karaki S, Tazoe H, Hayashi H, *et al.* (2008) Expression of the short-chain fatty acid receptor, GPR43, in the human colon. *J Mol Histol* **39**, 135–142.
94. Tazoe H, Otomo Y, Karaki S, *et al.* (2009) Expression of short-chain fatty acid receptor GPR41 in the human colon. *Biomed Res* **30**, 149–156.
95. Cavaglieri CR, Nishiyama A, Fernandes LC, *et al.* (2003) Differential effects of short-chain fatty acids on proliferation and production of pro- and anti-inflammatory cytokines by cultured lymphocytes. *Life Sci* **73**, 1683–1690.
96. Maslowski KM, Vieira AT, Ng A, *et al.* (2009) Regulation of inflammatory responses by gut microbiota and chemoattractant receptor GPR43. *Nature* **461**, 1282–1286.
97. Schley PD & Field CJ (2002) The immune-enhancing effects of dietary fibres and prebiotics. *Br J Nutr* **87**, Suppl. 2, S221–S230.
98. Watzl B, Girrbach S & Roller M (2005) Inulin, oligofructose and immunomodulation. *Br J Nutr* **93**, S49–S55.
99. Seifert S & Watzl B (2007) Inulin and oligofructose: review of experimental data on immune modulation. *J Nutr* **137**, 2563S–2567S.
100. Lomax AR & Calder PC (2009) Prebiotics, immune function, infection and inflammation: a review of the evidence. *Br J Nutr* **101**, 633–658.
101. Seifert S & Watzl B (2008) Prebiotics and the immune system: review of experimental and human data. In *Handbook of Prebiotics*, pp. 143–162 [GR Gibson and M Roberfroid, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
102. Bunout D, Hirsch S, Pia DLM, *et al.* (2002) Effects of prebiotics on the immune response to vaccination in the elderly. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* **26**, 372–376.
103. Bunout D, Barrera G, Hirsch S, *et al.* (2004) Effects of a nutritional supplement on the immune response and cytokine production in free-living Chilean elderly. *JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr* **28**, 348–354.
104. Duggan C, Penny ME, Hibberd P, *et al.* (2003) Oligofructose-supplemented infant cereal: 2 randomized, blinded, community-based trials in Peruvian infants. *Am J Clin Nutr* **77**, 937–942.
105. van Hoffen E, Ruiter B, Faber J, *et al.* (2009) A specific mixture of short-chain galacto-oligosaccharides and long-chain fructo-oligosaccharides induces a beneficial immunoglobulin profile in infants at high risk for allergy. *Allergy* **64**, 484–487.
106. Bakker-Zierikzee AM, Tol EA, Kroes H, *et al.* (2006) Faecal SIgA secretion in infants fed on pre- or probiotic infant formula. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol* **17**, 134–140.
107. Scholtens PA, Alliet P, Raes M, *et al.* (2008) Fecal secretory immunoglobulin A is increased in healthy infants who receive a formula with short-chain galacto-oligosaccharides and long-chain fructo-oligosaccharides. *J Nutr* **138**, 1141–1147.
108. Guigoz Y, Rochat F, Perruisseau-Carrier G, *et al.* (2002) Effects of oligosaccharide on the faecal flora and non-specific immune system in elderly people. *Nutr Res* **22**, 13–25.
109. Shadid R, Haarman M, Knol J, *et al.* (2007) Effects of galactooligosaccharide and long-chain fructooligosaccharide supplementation during pregnancy on maternal and neonatal microbiota and immunity – a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Am J Clin Nutr* **86**, 1426–1437.
110. Vulevic J, Drakoularakou A, Yaqoob P, *et al.* (2008) Modulation of the fecal microflora profile and immune function by a novel trans-galactooligosaccharide mixture (B-GOS) in healthy elderly volunteers. *Am J Clin Nutr* **88**, 1438–1446.
111. Lindsay J, Whelan K, Stagg A, *et al.* (2006) Clinical, microbiological, and immunological effects of fructo-oligosaccharide in patients with Crohn's disease. *Gut* **55**, 348–355.
112. Hoentjen F, Welling GW, Harmsen HJ, *et al.* (2005) Reduction of colitis by prebiotics in HLA-B27 transgenic rats is associated with microflora changes and immunomodulation. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* **11**, 977–985.
113. Moro G, Arslanoglu S, Stahl B, *et al.* (2006) A mixture of prebiotic oligosaccharides reduces the incidence of atopic dermatitis during the first six months of age. *Arch Dis Child* **91**, 814–819.
114. Fukasawa T, Murashima K, Matsumoto I, *et al.* (2007) Identification of marker genes for intestinal immunomodulating effect of a fructooligosaccharide by DNA microarray analysis. *J Agric Food Chem* **55**, 3174–3179.
115. Roller M, Pietro FA, Caderni G, *et al.* (2004) Intestinal immunity of rats with colon cancer is modulated by oligofructose-enriched inulin combined with *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacterium lactis*. *Br J Nutr* **92**, 931–938.
116. Roller M, Rechkemmer G & Watzl B (2004) Prebiotic inulin enriched with oligofructose in combination with the probiotics *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacterium lactis* modulates intestinal immune functions in rats. *J Nutr* **134**, 153–156.
117. Girrbach S, Schroeder B, Breves G, *et al.* (2005) Short- and long-term supplementation of pre- and probiotics modulate T-cell mediated immunity of the porcine GALT. *FASEB J* **19**, A444–A445.
118. Agostoni C, Axelsson I, Goulet O, *et al.* (2004) Prebiotic oligosaccharides in dietetic products for infants: a commentary by the ESPGHAN Committee on Nutrition. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **39**, 465–473.
119. Boehm G & Moro G (2008) Structural and functional aspects of prebiotics used in infant nutrition. *J Nutr* **138**, 1818S–1828S.
120. Yap WKW, Mohamed S, Husni JM, *et al.* (2008) Changes in infants faecal characteristics and microbiota by inulin supplementation. *J Clin Nutr Biochem* **43**, 159–166.
121. Ben XM, Zhou XY, Zhao WH, *et al.* (2004) Supplementation of milk formula with galacto-oligosaccharides improves intestinal micro-flora and fermentation in term infants. *Chin Med J (Engl)* **117**, 927–931.
122. Ben XM, Li J, Feng ZT, *et al.* (2008) Low level of galacto-oligosaccharide in infant formula stimulates growth of intestinal *Bifidobacteria* and *Lactobacilli*. *World J Gastroenterol* **14**, 6564–6568.

British Journal of Nutrition

123. Fanaro S, Marten B, Bagna R, *et al.* (2009) Galacto-oligosaccharides are bifidogenic and safe at weaning: a double-blind randomized multicenter study. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **48**, 82–88.
124. Magne F, Hachelaf W, Suau A, *et al.* (2008) Effects on faecal microbiota of dietary and acidic oligosaccharides in children during partial formula feeding. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **46**, 580–588.
125. Commission Directive 2006/141/EC on infant formulae and follow-on formulae and amending Directive 1999/21/EC. (2006) *Official J Eur Union* L**401**, 1–33.
126. Moore N, Chao C, Yang LP, *et al.* (2003) Effects of fructo-oligosaccharide-supplemented infant cereal: a double-blind, randomized trial. *Br J Nutr* **90**, 581–587.
127. Scholtens PA, Alles MS, Bindels JG, *et al.* (2006) Bifidogenic effects of solid weaning foods with added prebiotic oligosaccharides: a randomised controlled clinical trial. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **42**, 553–559.
128. Lien do TK, Nhung BT, Khan NC, *et al.* (2009) Impact of milk consumption on performance and health of primary school children in rural Vietnam. *Asia Pac J Clin Nutr* **18**, 326–334.
129. Bruzzese E, Volpicelli M, Squeglia V, *et al.* (2009) A formula containing galacto- and fructo-oligosaccharides prevents intestinal and extra-intestinal infections: an observational study. *Clin Nutr* **28**, 156–161.
130. Arslanoglu S, Moro GE & Boehm G (2007) Early supplementation of prebiotic oligosaccharides protects formula-fed infants against infections during the first 6 months of life. *J Nutr* **137**, 2420–2424.
131. Hoekstra JH, Szajewska H, Zikri MA, *et al.* (2004) Oral rehydration solution containing a mixture of non-digestible carbohydrates in the treatment of acute diarrhea: a multicenter randomized placebo controlled study on behalf of the ESPGHAN working group on intestinal infections. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **39**, 239–245.
132. Surawicz CM (2003) Probiotics, antibiotic-associated diarrhoea and *Clostridium difficile* diarrhoea in humans. *Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol* **17**, 775–783.
133. D'Souza AL, Rajkumar C, Cooke J, *et al.* (2002) Probiotics in prevention of antibiotic associated diarrhoea: meta-analysis. *BMJ* **324**, 1361.
134. Cremonini F, Di CS, Nista EC, *et al.* (2002) Meta-analysis: the effect of probiotic administration on antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **16**, 1461–1467.
135. Szajewska H & Mrukowicz J (2005) Meta-analysis: non-pathogenic yeast *Saccharomyces boulardii* in the prevention of antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **22**, 365–372.
136. Hawrelak JA, Whitten DL & Myers SP (2005) Is *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* GG effective in preventing the onset of antibiotic-associated diarrhoea: a systematic review. *Digestion* **72**, 51–56.
137. Szajewska H, Ruszczynski M & Radzikowski A (2006) Probiotics in the prevention of antibiotic-associated diarrhea in children: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Pediatr* **149**, 367–372.
138. Brunser O, Gotteland M, Cruchet S, *et al.* (2006) Effect of a milk formula with prebiotics on the intestinal microbiota of infants after an antibiotic treatment. *Pediatr Res* **59**, 451–456.
139. Kalliomaki M, Kirjavainen P, Eerola E, *et al.* (2001) Distinct patterns of neonatal gut microflora in infants in whom atopy was and was not developing. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* **107**, 129–134.
140. Osborn DA & Sinn JK (2007) Prebiotics in infants for prevention of allergic disease and food hypersensitivity. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007*, CD006474.
141. Arslanoglu S, Moro GE, Schmitt J, *et al.* (2008) Early dietary intervention with a mixture of prebiotic oligosaccharides reduces the incidence of allergic manifestations and infections during the first two years of life. *J Nutr* **138**, 1091–1095.
142. Cummings JH, Christie S & Cole TJ (2001) A study of fructo oligosaccharides in the prevention of travellers' diarrhoea. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **15**, 1139–1145.
143. Lewis S, Burmeister S, Cohen S, *et al.* (2005) Failure of dietary oligofructose to prevent antibiotic-associated diarrhoea. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **21**, 469–477.
144. Lewis S, Burmeister S & Brazier J (2005) Effect of the prebiotic oligofructose on relapse of *Clostridium difficile*-associated diarrhea: a randomized, controlled study. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* **3**, 442–448.
145. Spiller R, Aziz Q, Creed F, *et al.* (2007) Guidelines on the irritable bowel syndrome: mechanism and practical management. *Gut* **56**, 1770–1798.
146. Longstreth GF, Thompson WG, Chey WD, *et al.* (2006) Functional bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology* **130**, 1480–1491.
147. Serra J, Salvioli B, Azpiroz F, *et al.* (2002) Lipid-induced intestinal gas retention in irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology* **123**, 700–706.
148. Spiller R (2008) Review Article: probiotics and prebiotics in irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **28**, 385–396.
149. Balsari A, Ceccarelli A, Dubini F, *et al.* (1982) The fecal microbial population in the irritable bowel syndrome. *Microbiologica* **5**, 185–194.
150. Si JM, Yu YC, Fan YF, *et al.* (2004) Intestinal microecology and quality of life in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *World J Gastroenterol* **10**, 1802–1805.
151. Malinen EM, Rinttilä T, Kajander K, *et al.* (2005) Analysis of the fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients and healthy controls with real-time PCR. *Am J Gastroenterol* **100**, 373–382.
152. Chassard D, Marquet P, Del'Homme C, *et al.* (2006) Distribution of the main functionnal groups of micro-organims in the gut of IBS patients. *Reprod Nutr Develop* Suppl. 1, S4, (Abstract).
153. Kassinen A, Krogius L, Mäkivuokko H, *et al.* (2007) The fecal microbiota of irritable bowel syndrome patients differs significantly from that of healthy subjects. *Gastroenterology* **133**, 24–33.
154. Kerckhoffs APM, Samsom M, van der Rest ME, *et al.* (2009) Lower bifidobacteria counts in both duodenal mucose-associated and faecal microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome patients. *World J Gastroenterol* **15**, 2887–2892.
155. Maukonen J, Satokari R, Mattö J, *et al.* (2006) Prevalence and temporal stability of selected clostridal groups in irritable bowel syndrome in relation to predominant faecal bacteria. *J Med Microbiol* **55**, 625–633.
156. Nyman M (2002) Fermentation and bulking capacity of indigestible carbohydrates: the case of inulin and oligofructose. *Br J Nutr* **87**, S163–S168.
157. de Preter V, Vanhoutte T, Huys G, *et al.* (2008) Baseline microbiota activity and initial bifidobacteria counts influence responses to prebiotic dosing in healthy subjects. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **27**, 504–513.
158. Furrie E, Macfarlane S, Kennedy A, *et al.* (2005) Synbiotic therapy (*Bifidobacterium longum*/Synergy 1) initiates resolution of inflammation in patients with active ulcerative colitis: a randomised controlled pilot trial. *Gut* **54**, 1346.
159. Casellas F, Borruel N, Torrejon A, *et al.* (2007) Oral oligofructose-enriched inulin supplementation in acute ulcerative colitis is well tolerated and associated with lowered faecal calprotectin. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **25**, 1061–1067.

British Journal of Nutrition

160. Cook KF, Rabeneck L, Campbell CJ, *et al.* (1999) Evaluation of a multidimensional measure of dyspepsia-related health for use in a randomized clinical trial. *J Clin Epidemiol* **52**, 381–392.
161. Olesen M & Gudmand-Hoyer E (2000) Efficacy, safety, and tolerability of fructooligosaccharides in the treatment of irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Clin Nutr* **72**, 1570–1575.
162. Hunter JO, Tuffnell Q & Lee AJ (1999) Controled trial of oligofructose in the management of irritable bowel syndrome. *J Nutr* **129**, 1451S–1453S.
163. Irvine EJ, Whitehead WE, Chey WD, *et al.* (2006) Design of treatment trials for functional gastrointestinal disorders. *Gastroenterology* **133**, 24–33.
164. Dughera L, Elia C, Navino M, *et al.* (2007) Effects of synbiotic preparations on constipated irritable bowel syndrome symptoms. *Acta Biomed* **78**, 111–116.
165. Paineau D, Payen F, Panserieu S, *et al.* (2008) The effects of regular consumption of short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides on digestive comfort of subjects with minor functional bowel disorders. *Br J Nutr* **99**, 311–318.
166. Silk DBA, Davis A, Vulevic J, *et al.* (2009) Clinical trial: the effects of a trans-galactooligosaccharide prebiotic on faecal microbiota and symptoms in irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **29**, 508–518.
167. Loftus EV Jr (2004) Clinical epidemiology of inflammatory bowel disease: incidence, prevalence, and environmental influences. *Gastroenterology* **126**, 1504–1517.
168. Travis SP, Stange EF, Lemann M, *et al.* (2006) European Crohn's and Colitis Organisation. European evidence based consensus on the diagnosis and management of Crohn's disease: current management. *Gut* **55**, 16–35.
169. Lucendo AJ & De Rezende LC (2009) Importance of nutrition in inflammatory bowel disease. *World J Gastroenterol* **15**, 2081–2088.
170. Irvine EJ (1997) Quality of life issues in patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* **92**, 18S–24S.
171. Schwartz M & Cohen R (2008) Optimizing conventional therapy for inflammatory bowel disease. *Curr Gastroenterol Rep* **10**, 585–590.
172. Carter MJ, Lobo AJ & Travis SP (2004) Guidelines for the management of inflammatory bowel disease in adults. *Gut* **53**, Suppl. 5, V1–V16.
173. Zachos M, Tondeur M & Griffiths AM (2007) Enteral nutritional therapy for induction of remission in Crohn's disease. *The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 2007*, CD000542.
174. Teahon K, Pearson M, Levi AJ, *et al.* (1995) Practical aspects of enteral nutrition in the management of Crohn's disease. *J Parenter Enteral Nutr* **19**, 365–368.
175. Neuman MG (2007) Immune dysfunction in inflammatory bowel disease. *Transl Res* **149**, 173–186.
176. Lindsay JO & Hodgson HJ (2001) The immunoregulatory cytokine interleukin-10 – a therapy for Crohn's disease? *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* **15**, 16.
177. Brown SJ & Mayer L (2007) The immune response in inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* **102**, 2058–2069.
178. Sellon RK, Tonkonogy S, Schultz M, *et al.* (1998) Resident enteric bacteria are necessary for development of spontaneous colitis and immune system activation in interleukin-10-deficient mice. *Infect Immun* **66**, 5224–5231.
179. Fasoli R, Kettlewell MG, Mortensen N, *et al.* (1990) Response to faecal challenge in defunctioned colonic Crohn's disease: prediction of long-term course. *Br J Surg* **77**, 616–617.
180. Chichlowski M & Hale LP (2008) Bacterial-mucosal interactions in inflammatory bowel disease: an alliance gone bad. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* **295**, G1139–G1149.
181. Hugot JP, Chamaillard M, Zouali H, *et al.* (2001) Association of NOD2 leucine-rich repeat variants with susceptibility to Crohn's disease. *Nature* **411**, 599–603.
182. Zhang H, Massey D, Tremelling M, *et al.* (2008) Genetics of inflammatory bowel disease: clues to pathogenesis. *Br Med Bull* **87**, 17–30.
183. Miyauchi E, Morita H & Tanabe S (2009) *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* alleviates intestinal barrier dysfunction in part by increasing expression of zonula occludens-1 and myosin light-chain kinase *in vivo*. *J Dairy Sci* **92**, 2400–2408.
184. Garcia VE, De Lourdes De Abreu Ferrari M, Oswaldo Da Gama TH, *et al.* (2008) Influence of *Saccharomyces boulardii* on the intestinal permeability of patients with Crohn's disease in remission. *Scand J Gastroenterol* **43**, 842–848.
185. Hart AL, Lammers K, Brigidi P, *et al.* (2004) Modulation of human dendritic cell phenotype and function by probiotic bacteria. *Gut* **53**, 1602–1609.
186. Ng SC, Plamondon S, Hart AL, *et al.* (2008) Effective probiotic treatment (VSL# 3), but not placebo, in acute ulcerative colitis is associated with down-regulation of inflammatory intestinal dendritic cells. *Gut* **57**, A37.
187. Sartor RB (2008) Microbial influences in inflammatory bowel diseases. *Gastroenterology* **134**, 577–594.
188. Hedin C, Whelan K & Lindsay JO (2007) Evidence for the use of probiotics and prebiotics in inflammatory bowel disease: a review of clinical trials. *Proc Nutr Soc* **66**, 307–315.
189. Seksik P, Rigottier-Gois L, Gramet G, *et al.* (2003) Alterations of the dominant faecal bacterial groups in patients with Crohn's disease of the colon. *Gut* **52**, 237–242.
190. Sokol H, Seksik P, Furet JP, *et al.* (2009) Low counts of *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* in colitis microbiota. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* **15**, 1183–1189.
191. Macfarlane S, Furrie E, Cummings JH, *et al.* (2004) Chemotaxonomic analysis of bacterial populations colonizing the rectal mucosa in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Clin Infect Dis* **38**, 1690–1699.
192. Mylonaki M, Rayment NB, Rampton DS, *et al.* (2005) Molecular characterization of rectal mucosa-associated bacterial flora in inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* **11**, 481–487.
193. Swidsinski A, Ladhoff A, Pernthaler A, *et al.* (2002) Mucosal flora in inflammatory bowel disease. *Gastroenterology* **122**, 44–54.
194. Frank DN, St Amand AL, Feldman RA, *et al.* (2007) Molecular-phylogenetic characterization of microbial community imbalances in human inflammatory bowel diseases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **104**, 13780–13785.
195. Sokol H, Lepage P, Seksik P, *et al.* (2006) Temperature gradient gel electrophoresis of fecal 16S rRNA reveals active *Escherichia coli* in the microbiota of patients with ulcerative colitis. *J Clin Microbiol* **44**, 3172–3177.
196. Martinez-Medina M, Aldeguer X, Gonzalez-Huix F, *et al.* (2006) Abnormal microbiota composition in the ileocolonic mucosa of Crohn's disease patients as revealed by polymerase chain reaction-denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* **12**, 1136–1145.
197. Sokol H, Pigneur B, Watterlot L, *et al.* (2008) Faecalibacterium prausnitzii is an anti-inflammatory commensal bacterium identified by gut microbiota analysis of Crohn disease patients. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* **105**, 16731–16736.
198. Kolida S & Gibson GR (2007) Prebiotic capacity of inulin-type fructans. *J Nutr* **137**, 2503S–2506S.
199. Langlands SJ, Hopkins MJ, Coleman N, *et al.* (2004) Prebiotic carbohydrates modify the mucosa associated microflora of the human large bowel. *Gut* **53**, 1610–1616.
200. Ramirez-Farias C, Slezak K, Fuller Z, *et al.* (2009) Effect of inulin on the human gut microbiota: stimulation of

NS British Journal of Nutrition

Bifidobacterium adolescentis and *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii*. *Br J Nutr* **101**, 541–550.
201. Burger-van PN, Vincent A, Puiman PJ, *et al.* (2009) The regulation of intestinal mucin MUC2 expression by short-chain fatty acids: implications for epithelial protection. *Biochem J* **420**, 211–219.
202. Pullan RD, Thomas GA, Rhodes M, *et al.* (1994) Thickness of adherent mucus gel on colonic mucosa in humans and its relevance to colitis. *Gut* **35**, 353–359.
203. Leenen CH & Dieleman LA (2007) Inulin and oligofructose in chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *J Nutr* **137**, 2572S–2575S.
204. Hedin CRH, Graczer M, Sanderson JD, *et al.* (2009) Probiotic and prebiotic use by patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Proc Nutr Soc* **68**, E36.
205. Friedman G & George J (2000) Treatment of refractory 'pouchitis' with prebiotic and probiotic therapy. *Gastroenterology* **118**, A778.
206. Welters CF, Heineman E, Thunnissen FB, *et al.* (2002) Effect of dietary inulin supplementation on inflammation of pouch mucosa in patients with an ileal pouch-anal anastomosis. *Dis Colon Rectum* **45**, 621–627.
207. Kanauchi O, Mitsuyama K, Homma T, *et al.* (2003) Treatment of ulcerative colitis patients by long-term administration of germinated barley foodstuff: multi-center open trial. *Int J Mol Med* **12**, 701–704.
208. Hanai H, Kanauchi O, Mitsuyama K, *et al.* (2004) Germinated barley foodstuff prolongs remission in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Int J Mol Med* **13**, 643–647.
209. Fujimori S, Gudis K, Mitsui K, *et al.* (2009) A randomized controlled trial on the efficacy of synbiotic versus probiotic or prebiotic treatment to improve the quality of life in patients with ulcerative colitis. *Nutrition* **25**, 520–525.
210. Hussey TA, Issenman RM, Persad R, *et al.* (2003) Nutrition therapy in pediatric Crohn's disease patients improves nutritional status and decreases inflammation. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **37**.
211. Benjamin JL, Hedin CRH, Koutsoumpas A, *et al.* (2010) No clinical benefit of prebiotics in the treatment of active Crohn's disease: a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Gut*, **59**: S1-OC-003-A1.
212. Chermesh I, Tamir A, Reshef R, *et al.* (2007) Failure of Synbiotic 2000 to prevent postoperative recurrence of Crohn's disease. *Dig Dis Sci* **52**, 385–389.
213. Su C, Lewis JD, Goldberg B, *et al.* (2007) A meta-analysis of the placebo rates of remission and response in clinical trials of active ulcerative colitis. *Gastroenterology* **132**, 516–526.
214. Su C, Lichtenstein GR, Krok K, *et al.* (2004) A meta-analysis of the placebo rates of remission and response in clinical trials of active Crohn's disease. *Gastroenterology* **126**, 1257–1269.
215. World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for cancer research (2007) *Food, Nutrition, Physical Activity, and the Prevention of Cancer: A Global Perspective*. Washington, DC: WCRF/AICR.
216. Rowland I (2009) The role of the gastrointestinal microflora in colorectal cancer. *Curr Pharmaceut Design* **15**, 1524–1527.
217. Hughes R & Rowland I (2003) Nutritional and microbial modification of carcinogenesis. In *Gut Flora, Nutrition, Immunity and Health*, pp. 208–236 [R Fuller and G Perdigon, editors]. Oxford: Blackwell Publishing.
218. Rowland IR (1995) Toxicology of the colon – role of the intestinal microflora. In *Human Colonic Bacteria, Role in Nutrition, Physiology and Pathology*, pp. 155–174 [GT Macfarlane and GR Gibson, editors]. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
219. Saito Y, Takano T & Rowland I (1992) Effects of soybean oligosaccharides on the human gut microflora in *in vitro* culture. *Microb Ecol Health Dis* **5**, 105–110.
220. Reddy BS & Rivenson A (1993) Inhibitory effect of *Bifidobacterium longum* on colon, mammary, and liver carcinogenesis induced by 2-amino-3-methylimidazo[4,5-f]quinoline, a food mutagen. *Cancer Res* **53**, 3914–3918.
221. Rowland IR, Rumney CJ, Coutts JT, *et al.* (1998) Effect of *Bifidobacterium longum* and inulin on gut bacterial metabolism and carcinogen-induced aberrant crypt foci in rats. *Carcinogenesis* **19**, 281–285.
222. Hidaka H, Eida T, Takizawa T, *et al.* (1986) Effects of fructooligosaccharides on intestinal flora and human health. *Bifidobact Microfl* **5**, 37–50.
223. Rowland IR & Tanaka R (1993) The effects of transgalactosylated oligosaccharides on gut flora metabolism in rats associated with a human faecal microflora. *J Appl Bacteriol* **74**, 667–674.
224. Tanaka R, Takayama H, Morotomi M, *et al.* (1983) Effects of administration of TOS and *Bifidobacterium breve* 4006 on the human fecal flora. *Bifidobact Microfl* **2**, 17–24.
225. Gostner A, Blaut M, Schaffer V, *et al.* (2006) Effect of isomalt consumption on faecal microflora and colonic metabolism in healthy volunteers. *Br J Nutr* **95**, 40–50.
226. Pretlow TP, O'Riordan MA, Somich GA, *et al.* (1992) Aberrant crypts correlate with tumor incidence in F344 rats treated with azoxymethane and phytate. *Carcinogenesis* **13**, 1509–1512.
227. Rao CV, Chou D, Simi B, *et al.* (1998) Prevention of colonic aberrant crypt foci and modulation of large bowel microbial activity by dietary coffee fiber, inulin and pectin. *Carcinogenesis* **19**, 1815–1819.
228. Gallaher DD, Stallings WH, Blessing LL, *et al.* (1996) Probiotics, cecal microflora, and aberrant crypts in the rat colon. *J Nutr* **126**, 1362–1371.
229. Verghese M, Rao DR, Chawan CB, *et al.* (2002) Dietary inulin suppresses azoxymethane-induced preneoplastic aberrant crypt foci in mature Fisher 344 rats. *J Nutr* **132**, 2804–2808.
230. Reddy BS, Hamid R & Rao CV (1997) Effect of dietary oligofructose and inulin on colonic preneoplastic aberrant crypt foci inhibition. *Carcinogenesis* **18**, 1371–1374.
231. Buddington KK, Donahoo JB & Buddington RK (2002) Dietary oligofructose and inulin protect mice from enteric and systemic pathogens and tumor inducers. *J Nutr* **132**, 472–477.
232. Poulsen M, Molck AM & Jacobsen BL (2002) Different effects of short- and long-chained fructans on large intestinal physiology and carcinogen-induced aberrant crypt foci in rats. *Nutr Cancer* **42**, 194–205.
233. Jacobsen H, Poulsen M, Dragsted LO, *et al.* (2006) Carbohydrate digestibility predicts colon carcinogenesis in azoxymethane-treated rats. *Nutr Cancer* **55**, 163–170.
234. Caderni G, Femia AP, Giannini A, *et al.* (2003) Identification of mucin-depleted foci in the unsectioned colon of azoxymethane-treated rats: correlation with carcinogenesis. *Cancer Res* **63**, 2388–2392.
235. Challa A, Rao DR, Chawan CB, *et al.* (1997) *Bifidobacterium longum* and lactulose suppress azoxymethane-induced colonic aberrant crypt foci in rats. *Carcinogenesis* **18**, 517–521.
236. Hsu CK, Liao JW, Chung YC, *et al.* (2004) Xylooligosaccharides and fructooligosaccharides affect the intestinal microbiota and precancerous colonic lesion development in rats. *J Nutr* **134**, 1523–1528.
237. Wijnands MV, Schoterman HC, Bruijntjes JB, *et al.* (2001) Effect of dietary galacto-oligosaccharides on azoxymethane-induced aberrant crypt foci and colorectal cancer in Fischer 344 rats. *Carcinogenesis* **22**, 127–132.

NS British Journal of Nutrition

238. Nakanishi S, Kataoka K, Kuwahara T, *et al.* (2003) Effects of high amylose maize starch and *Clostridium butyricum* on metabolism in colonic microbiota and formation of azoxymethane-induced aberrant crypt foci in the rat colon. *Microbiol Immunol* **47**, 951–958.
239. Wijnands MV, Appel MJ, Hollanders VM, *et al.* (1999) A comparison of the effects of dietary cellulose and fermentable galacto-oligosaccharide, in a rat model of colorectal carcinogenesis: fermentable fibre confers greater protection than non-fermentable fibre in both high and low fat backgrounds. *Carcinogenesis* **20**, 651–656.
240. Femia AP, Luceri C, Dolara P, *et al.* (2002) Antitumorigenic activity of the prebiotic inulin enriched with oligofructose in combination with the probiotics *Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacterium lactis* on azoxymethane-induced colon carcinogenesis in rats. *Carcinogenesis* **23**, 1953–1960.
241. Pierre F, Perrin P, Champ M, *et al.* (1997) Short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides reduce the occurrence of colon tumors and develop gut-associated lymphoid tissue in Min mice. *Cancer Res* **57**, 225–228.
242. Mutanen M, Pajari AM & Oikarinen SI (2000) Beef induces and rye bran prevents the formation of intestinal polyps in Apc(Min) mice: relation to beta-catenin and PKC isozymes. *Carcinogenesis* **21**, 1167–1173.
243. Pajari AM, Rajakangas J, Paivarinta E, *et al.* (2003) Promotion of intestinal tumor formation by inulin is associated with an accumulation of cytosolic beta-catenin in Min mice. *Int J Cancer* **106**, 653–660.
244. Pool-Zobel BL (2005) Inulin-type fructans and reduction in colon cancer risk: review of experimental and human data. *Br J Nutr* **93**, Suppl. 1, S73–S90.
245. Taper HS & Roberfroid M (1999) Influence of inulin and oligofructose on breast cancer and tumor growth. *J Nutr* **129**, 1488S–1491S.
246. Taper HS & Roberfroid MB (2005) Possible adjuvant cancer therapy by two prebiotics-inulin or oligofructose. *In vivo* **19**, 201–204.
247. Gill CI & Rowland IR (2002) Diet and cancer: assessing the risk. *Br J Nutr* **88**, **Suppl. 1**, S73–S87.
248. Rafter J, Bennett M, Caderni G, *et al.* (2007) Dietary synbiotics reduce cancer risk factors in polypectomized and colon cancer patients. *Am J Clin Nutr* **85**, 488–496.
249. Rowland IR, Bearne CA, Fischer R, *et al.* (1996) The effect of lactulose on DNA damage induced by DMH in the colon of human flora-associated rats. *Nutr Cancer* **26**, 37–47.
250. Klinder A, Forster A, Caderni G, *et al.* (2004) Fecal water genotoxicity is predictive of tumor-preventive activities by inulin-like oligofructoses, probiotics (*Lactobacillus rhamnosus* and *Bifidobacterium lactis*), and their synbiotic combination. *Nutr Cancer* **49**, 144–155.
251. Perrin P, Pierre F, Patry Y, *et al.* (2001) Only fibres promoting a stable butyrate producing colonic ecosystem decrease the rate of aberrant crypt foci in rats. *Gut* **48**, 53–61.
252. Hughes R & Rowland IR (2001) Stimulation of apoptosis by two prebiotic chicory fructans in the rat colon. *Carcinogenesis* **22**, 43–47.
253. Commane DM, Shortt CT, Silvi S, *et al.* (2005) Effects of fermentation products of pro- and prebiotics on trans-epithelial electrical resistance in an *in vitro* model of the colon. *Nutr Cancer* **51**, 102–109.
254. Roberfroid M (1993) Dietary fibers, inulin, and oligofructose: a review comparing their physiological effects. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* **33**, 103–148.
255. Roberfroid MB (1998) Prebiotics and synbiotics: concepts and nutritional properties. *Br J Nutr* **80**, S197–S202.
256. Remesy C, Levrat MA, Gamet L, *et al.* (1993) Cecal fermentations in rats fed oligosaccharides (inulin) are modulated by dietary calcium level. *Am J Physiol* **264**, G855–G862.
257. Ohta A, Ohtsuki M, Baba S, *et al.* (1995) Calcium and magnesium absorption from the colon and rectum are increased in rats fed fructooligosaccharides. *J Nutr* **125**, 2417–2424.
258. Lopez HW, Coudray C, Levrat-Verny MA, *et al.* (2000) Fructooligosaccharides enhance mineral apparent absorption and counteract the deleterious effects of phytic acid on mineral homeostasis in rats. *J Nutr Biochem* **11**, 500–508.
259. Lutz T & Scharrer E (1991) Effect of short-chain fatty acids on calcium absorption by the rat colon. *Exp Physiol* **76**, 615–618.
260. Ohta A, Motohashi Y, Sakai K, *et al.* (1998) Dietary fructooligosaccharides increase calcium absorption and levels of mucosal calbindin-D9k in the large intestine of gastrectomized rats. *Scand J Gastroenterol* **33**, 1062–1068.
261. Takasaki M, Inaba H, Ohta A, *et al.* (2000) Dietary short-chain fructooligosaccharides increase calbindin-D9k levels only in the large intestine in rats independent of dietary calcium deficiency or serum 1,25 dihydroxy vitamin D levels. *Int J Vitam Nutr Res* **70**, 206–213.
262. Raschka L & Daniel H (2005) Mechanisms underlying the effects of inulin-type fructans on calcium absorption in the large intestine of rats. *Bone* **37**, 728–735.
263. Scholz-Ahrens KE & Schrezenmeir J (2002) Inulin, oligofructose and mineral metabolism – experimental data and mechanism. *Br J Nutr* **87**, Suppl. 2, S179–S186.
264. Heijnen AM, Brink EJ, Lemmens AG, *et al.* (1993) Ileal pH and apparent absorption of magnesium in rats fed on diets containing either lactose or lactulose. *Br J Nutr* **70**, 747–756.
265. Beynen AC, Baas JC, Hoekemeijer PE, *et al.* (2002) Faecal bacterial profile, nitrogen excretion and mineral absorption in healthy dogs fed supplemental oligofructose. *J Anim Physiol Anim Nutr (Berl)* **86**, 298–305.
266. Rayssiguier Y & Remesy C (1977) Magnesium absorption in the caecum of rats related to volatile fatty acids production. *Ann Rech Vet* **8**, 105–110.
267. Leonhard-Marek S, Gabel G & Martens H (1998) Effects of short chain fatty acids and carbon dioxide on magnesium transport across sheep rumen epithelium. *Exp Physiol* **83**, 155–164.
268. Delzenne N, Aertssens J, Verplaetse H, *et al.* (1995) Effect of fermentable fructo-oligosaccharides on mineral, nitrogen and energy digestive balance in the rat. *Life Sci* **57**, 1579–1587.
269. Yap KW, Mohamed S, Yazid AM, *et al.* (2005) Dose-response effects of inulin on the faecal fatty acids content and mineral absorption of formula-fed infants. *Nutr Food Sci* **35**, 208–219.
270. van den Heuvel EG, Muys T, van Dokkum W, *et al.* (1999) Oligofructose stimulates calcium absorption in adolescents. *Am J Clin Nutr* **69**, 544–548.
271. Griffin IJ, Davila PM & Abrams SA (2002) Non-digestible oligosaccharides and calcium absorption in girls with adequate calcium intakes. *Br J Nutr* **87**, Suppl. 2, S187–S191.
272. Griffin IJ, Hicks PD, Heaney RP, *et al.* (2003) Enriched chicory inulin increases calcium absorption mainly in girls with lower calcium absorption. *Nutr Res* **23**, 901–909.
273. van den Heuvel EG, Muijs T, Brouns F, *et al.* (2009) Short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides improve magnesium absorption in adolescent girls with a low calcium intake. *Nutr Res* **29**, 229–237.
274. Abrams SA, Griffin IJ, Hawthorne KM, *et al.* (2005) A combination of prebiotic short- and long-chain inulin-type fructans enhances calcium absorption and bone mineralization in young adolescents. *Am J Clin Nutr* **82**, 471–476.
275. Cashman KDA (2006) A prebiotic substance persistently enhances intestinal calcium absorption and increases bone mineralization in young adolescents. *Nutr Rev* **64**, 189–196.
276. Abrams SA, Griffin IJ & Hawthorne KM (2007) Young adolescents who respond to an inulin-type fructan substantially increase total absorbed calcium and daily calcium accretion to the skeleton. *J Nutr* **137**, 2524S–2526S.

NS British Journal of Nutrition

277. Coudray C, Bellanger J, Castiglia-Delavaud C, *et al.* (1997) Effect of soluble or partly soluble dietary fibres supplementation on absorption and balance of calcium, magnesium, iron and zinc in healthy young men. *Eur J Clin Nutr* **51**, 375–380.
278. van den Heuvel EG, Schaafsma G, Muys T, *et al.* (1998) Non-digestible oligosaccharides do not interfere with calcium and nonheme-iron absorption in young, healthy men. *Am J Clin Nutr* **67**, 445–451.
279. Teuri U, Karkkainen M, Lamberg-Allardt C, *et al.* (1999) Addition of inulin to breakfast does not acutely affect serum ionized calcium and parathyroid hormone concentrations. *Ann Nutr Metab* **43**, 356–364.
280. Lopez-Huertas E, Teucher B, Boza JJ, *et al.* (2006) Absorption of calcium from milks enriched with fructo-oligosaccharides, caseinophosphopeptides, tricalcium phosphate, and milk solids. *Am J Clin Nutr* **83**, 310–316.
281. Abrams SA, Hawthorne KM, Aliu O, *et al.* (2007) An inulin-type fructan enhances calcium absorption primarily via an effect on colonic absorption in humans. *J Nutr* **137**, 2208–2212.
282. Ducros V, Arnaud J, Tahiri M, *et al.* (2005) Influence of short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides (sc-FOS) on absorption of Cu, Zn, and Se in healthy postmenopausal women. *J Am Coll Nutr* **24**, 30–37.
283. Tahiri M, Tressol JC, Arnaud J, *et al.* (2001) Five-week intake of short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides increases intestinal absorption and status of magnesium in postmenopausal women. *J Bone Miner Res* **16**, 2152–2160.
284. Tahiri M, Tressol JC, Arnaud J, *et al.* (2003) Effect of short-chain fructooligosaccharides on intestinal calcium absorption and calcium status in postmenopausal women: a stable-isotope study. *Am J Clin Nutr* **77**, 449–457.
285. van den Heuvel EG, Muijs T, van Dokkum W, *et al.* (1999) Lactulose stimulates calcium absorption in postmenopausal women. *J Bone Miner Res* **14**, 1211–1216.
286. van den Heuvel EG, Schoterman MH & Muijs T (2000) Transgalactooligosaccharides stimulate calcium absorption in postmenopausal women. *J Nutr* **130**, 2938–2942.
287. Adolphi B, Scholz-Ahrens KE, de Vrese M, *et al.* (2009) Short-term effect of bedtime consumption of fermented milk supplemented with calcium, inulin-type fructans and caseinphosphopeptides on bone metabolism in healthy, postmenopausal women. *Eur J Nutr* **48**, 45–53.
288. Kim YY, Jang KH, Lee EY, *et al.* (2004) The effect of chicory fructan fiber on calcium absorption and bone metabolism in Korean postmenopausal women. *Nutr Sci* **7**, 151–157.
289. Holloway L, Moynihan S, Abrams SA, *et al.* (2007) Effects of oligofructose-enriched inulin on intestinal absorption of calcium and magnesium and bone turnover markers in postmenopausal women. *Br J Nutr* **97**, 365–372.
290. Dahl WJ, Whiting SJ, Isaac TM, *et al.* (2005) Effects of thickened beverages fortified with inulin on beverage acceptance, gastrointestinal function, and bone resorption in institutionalized adults. *Nutrition* **21**, 308–311.
291. Levrat MA, Remesy C & Demigne C (1991) High propionic acid fermentations and mineral accumulation in the cecum of rats adapted to different levels of inulin. *J Nutr* **121**, 1730–1737.
292. Ohta A, Ohtuki M, Takizawa T, *et al.* (1994) Effects of fructooligosaccharides on the absorption of magnesium and calcium by cecectomized rats. *Int J Vitam Nutr Res* **64**, 316–323.
293. Ellegard L, Andersson H & Bosaeus I (1997) Inulin and oligofructose do not influence the absorption of cholesterol, or the excretion of cholesterol, Ca, Mg, Zn, Fe, or bile acids but increases energy excretion in ileostomy subjects. *Eur J Clin Nutr* **51**, 1–5.
294. Scholz-Ahrens KE, Schaafsma G, van den Heuvel EG, *et al.* (2001) Effects of prebiotics on mineral metabolism. *Am J Clin Nutr* **73**, 459S–464S.
295. Brommage R, Binacua C, Antille S, *et al.* (1993) Intestinal calcium absorption in rats is stimulated by dietary lactulose and other resistant sugars. *J Nutr* **123**, 2186–2194.
296. Scholz-Ahrens KE, Acil Y & Schrezenmeir J (2002) Effect of oligofructose or dietary calcium on repeated calcium and phosphorus balances, bone mineralization and trabecular structure in ovariectomized rats*. *Br J Nutr* **88**, 365–377.
297. Kruger MC, Brown KE, Collett G, *et al.* (2003) The effect of fructooligosaccharides with various degrees of polymerization on calcium bioavailability in the growing rat. *Exp Biol Med (Maywood)* **228**, 683–688.
298. Coudray C, Tressol JC, Gueux E, *et al.* (2003) Effects of inulin-type fructans of different chain length and type of branching on intestinal absorption and balance of calcium and magnesium in rats. *Eur J Nutr* **42**, 91–98.
299. Coxam V (2005) Inulin-type fructans and bone health: state of the art and perspectives in the management of osteoporosis. *Br J Nutr* **93**, Suppl. 1, S111–S123.
300. Setchell KD, Brown NM & Lydeking-Olsen E (2002) The clinical importance of the metabolite equol–a clue to the effectiveness of soy and its isoflavones. *J Nutr* **132**, 3577–3584.
301. Uehara M, Ohta A, Sakai K, *et al.* (2001) Dietary fructooligosaccharides modify intestinal bioavailability of a single dose of genistein and daidzein and affect their urinary excretion and kinetics in blood of rats. *J Nutr* **131**, 787–795.
302. Ohta A, Uehara M, Sakai K, *et al.* (2002) A combination of dietary fructooligosaccharides and isoflavone conjugates increases femoral bone mineral density and equol production in ovariectomized mice. *J Nutr* **132**, 2048–2054.
303. Mathey J, Puel C, Kati-Coulibaly S, *et al.* (2004) Fructooligosaccharides maximize bone-sparing effects of soy isoflavone-enriched diet in the ovariectomized rat. *Calcif Tissue Int* **75**, 169–179.
304. Devareddy L, Khalil DA, Korlagunta K, *et al.* (2006) The effects of fructo-oligosaccharides in combination with soy protein on bone in osteopenic ovariectomized rats. *Menopause* **13**, 692–699.
305. Zafar TA, Weaver CM, Jones K, *et al.* (2004) Inulin effects on bioavailability of soy isoflavones and their calcium absorption enhancing ability. *J Agric Food Chem* **52**, 2827–2831.
306. Piazza C, Privitera MG, Melilli B, *et al.* (2007) Influence of inulin on plasma isoflavone concentrations in healthy postmenopausal women. *Am J Clin Nutr* **86**, 775–780.
307. Ohta A, Baba S, Takizawa T, *et al.* (1994) Effects of fructooligosaccharides on the absorption of magnesium in the magnesium-deficient rat model. *J Nutr Sci Vitaminol (Tokyo)* **40**, 171–180.
308. Ohta A, Ohtsuki M, Baba S, *et al.* (1995) Effects of fructooligosaccharides on the absorption of iron, calcium and magnesium in iron-deficient anemic rats. *J Nutr Sci Vitaminol (Tokyo)* **41**, 281–291.
309. Kobayashi M, Nagatani Y, Magishi N, *et al.* (2006) Promotive effect of Shoyu polysaccharides from soy sauce on iron absorption in animals and humans. *Int J Mol Med* **18**, 1159–1163.
310. Cani PD & Delzenne NM (2009) The role of the gut microbiota in energy metabolism and metabolic disease. *Curr Pharm Des* **15**, 1546–1558.
311. Daubioul C, Rousseau N, Demeure R, *et al.* (2002) Dietary fructans, but not cellulose, decrease triglyceride accumulation in the liver of obese Zucker fa/fa rats. *J Nutr* **132**, 967–973.
312. Cani PD, Possemiers S, van de WT, *et al.* (2009) Changes in gut microbiota control inflammation in obese mice through a

British Journal of Nutrition

mechanism involving GLP-2-driven improvement of gut permeability. *Gut* **58**, 1091–1103.
313. Chaudhri OB, Salem V, Murphy KG, *et al.* (2008) Gastrointestinal satiety signals. *Annu Rev Physiol* **70**, 239–255.
314. Druce MR, Small CJ & Bloom SR (2004) Minireview: gut peptides regulating satiety. *Endocrinology* **145**, 2660–2665.
315. Wynne K, Stanley S, McGowan B, *et al.* (2005) Appetite control. *J Endocrinol* **184**, 291–318.
316. Knauf C, Cani PD, Perrin C, *et al.* (2005) Brain glucagon-like peptide-1 increases insulin secretion and muscle insulin resistance to favor hepatic glycogen storage. *J Clin Invest* **115**, 3554–3563.
317. Cani PD, Dewever C & Delzenne NM (2004) Inulin-type fructans modulate gastrointestinal peptides involved in appetite regulation (glucagon-like peptide-1 and ghrelin) in rats. *Br J Nutr* **92**, 521–526.
318. Delzenne NM, Cani PD, Daubioul C, *et al.* (2005) Impact of inulin and oligofructose on gastrointestinal peptides. *Br J Nutr* **93**, Suppl. 1, S157–S161.
319. Urias-Silvas JE, Cani PD, Delmee E, *et al.* (2008) Physiological effects of dietary fructans extracted from Agave tequilana Gto. and *Dasylirion* spp. *Br J Nutr* **99**, 254–261.
320. Cani PD, Knauf C, Iglesias MA, *et al.* (2006) Improvement of glucose tolerance and hepatic insulin sensitivity by oligofructose requires a functional glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor. *Diabetes* **55**, 1484–1490.
321. Reimer RA & Russell JC (2008) Glucose tolerance, lipids, and GLP-1 secretion in JCR:LA-cp rats fed a high protein fiber diet. *Obesity (Silver Spring)* **16**, 40–46.
322. Maurer AD, Chen Q, McPherson C, *et al.* (2009) Changes in satiety hormones and expression of genes involved in glucose and lipid metabolism in rats weaned onto diets high in fibre or protein reflect susceptibility to increased fat mass in adulthood. *J Physiol* **587**, 679–691.
323. Cani PD, Hoste S, Guiot Y, *et al.* (2007) Dietary non-digestible carbohydrates promote L-cell differentiation in the proximal colon of rats. *Br J Nutr* **98**, 32–37.
324. Cani PD, Joly E, Horsmans Y, *et al.* (2006) Oligofructose promotes satiety in healthy human: a pilot study. *Eur J Clin Nutr* **60**, 567–572.
325. Archer BJ, Johnson SK, Devereux HM, *et al.* (2004) Effect of fat replacement by inulin or lupin-kernel fibre on sausage patty acceptability, post-meal perceptions of satiety and food intake in men. *Br J Nutr* **91**, 591–599.
326. Piche T, des Varannes SB, Sacher-Huvelin S, *et al.* (2003) Colonic fermentation influences lower esophageal sphincter function in gastroesophageal reflux disease. *Gastroenterology* **124**, 894–902.
327. Cani PD, Lecourt E, Dewulf EM, *et al.* (2009) Gut microbiota fermentation of prebiotics increases satietogenic and incretin gut peptide production with consequences for appetite sensation and glucose response after a meal. *Am J Clin Nutr* **90**, 1236–1243.
328. Abrams SA, Griffin IJ, Hawthorne KM, *et al.* (2007) Effect of prebiotic supplementation and calcium intake on body mass index. *J Pediatr* **151**, 293–298.
329. Genta S, Cabrera W, Habib N, *et al.* (2009) Yacon syrup: beneficial effects on obesity and insulin resistance in humans. *Clin Nutr* **28**, 182–187.
330. Parnell JA & Reimer RA (2009) Weight loss during oligofructose supplementation is associated with decreased ghrelin and increased peptide YY in overweight and obese adults. *Am J Clin Nutr* **89**, 1751–1759.
331. Peters HP, Boers HM, Haddeman E, *et al.* (2009) No effect of added beta-glucan or of fructooligosaccharide on appetite or energy intake. *Am J Clin Nutr* **89**, 58–63.
332. Busserolles J, Gueux E, Rock E, *et al.* (2003) Oligofructose protects against the hypertriglyceridemic and pro-oxidative effects of a high fructose diet in rats. *J Nutr* **133**, 1903–1908.
333. Kok NN, Taper HS & Delzenne NM (1998) Oligofructose modulates lipid metabolism alterations induced by a fat-rich diet in rats. *J Appl Toxicol* **18**, 47–53.
334. Cani PD, Neyrinck AM, Maton N, *et al.* (2005) Oligofructose promotes satiety in rats fed a high-fat diet: involvement of glucagon-like peptide-1. *Obes Res* **13**, 1000–1007.
335. Delmee E, Cani PD, Gual G, *et al.* (2006) Relation between colonic proglucagon expression and metabolic response to oligofructose in high fat diet-fed mice. *Life Sci* **79**, 1007–1013.
336. Cani PD, Daubioul CA, Reusens B, *et al.* (2005) Involvement of endogenous glucagon-like peptide-1(7-36) amide on glycaemia-lowering effect of oligofructose in streptozotocin-treated rats. *J Endocrinol* **185**, 457–465.
337. Perrin M IV, archesini M, Rochat FC, *et al.* (2003) Oligofructose does not affect the development of Type 1 diabetes mellitus induced by dietary proteins in the diabetes-prone BB rat model. *Diab Nutr Metabol* **16**, 94–101.
338. Respondek F, Swanson KS, Belsito KR, *et al.* (2008) Short-chain fructooligosaccharides influence insulin sensitivity and gene expression of fat tissue in obese dogs. *J Nutr* **138**, 1712–1718.
339. Luo J, Rizkalla SW, Alamowitch C, *et al.* (1996) Chronic consumption of short-chain fructooligosaccharides by healthy subjects decreased basal hepatic glucose production but had no effect on insulin-stimulated glucose metabolism. *Am J Clin Nutr* **63**, 939–945.
340. Luo J, Van Yperselle M, Rizkalla SW, *et al.* (2000) Chronic consumption of short-chain fructooligosaccharides does not affect basal hepatic glucose production or insulin resistance in type 2 diabetics. *J Nutr* **130**, 1572–1577.
341. Giacco R, Clemente G, Luongo D, *et al.* (2004) Effects of short-chain fructo-oligosaccharides on glucose and lipid metabolism in mild hypercholesterolaemic individuals. *Clin Nutr* **23**, 331–340.
342. Delzenne NM & Cani PD (2008) Gut microflora is a key player in host energy homeostasis. *Med Sci (Paris)* **24**, 505–510.
343. Delzenne NM & Williams CM (2002) Prebiotics and lipid metabolism. *Curr Opin Lipidol* **13**, 61–67.
344. Daubioul CA, Taper HS, De Wispelaere LD, *et al.* (2000) Dietary oligofructose lessens hepatic steatosis, but does not prevent hypertriglyceridemia in obese zucker rats. *J Nutr* **130**, 1314–1319.
345. Morand C, Remesy C & Demigne C (1993) Fatty acids are potent modulators of lactate utilization in isolated hepatocytes from fed rats. *Am J Physiol* **264**, E816–E823.
346. Delzenne NM, Daubioul C, Neyrinck A, *et al.* (2002) Inulin and oligofructose modulate lipid metabolism in animals: review of biochemical events and future prospects. *Br J Nutr* **87**, S255–S259.
347. Sakakibara S, Yamauchi T, Oshima Y, *et al.* (2006) Acetic acid activates hepatic AMPK and reduces hyperglycemia in diabetic KK-A(y) mice. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* **344**, 597–604.
348. Levrat MA, Favier ML, Moundras C, *et al.* (1994) Role of dietary propionic acid and bile acid excretion in the hypocholesterolemic effects of oligosaccharides in rats. *J Nutr* **124**, 531–538.
349. Fiordaliso M, Kok N, Desager JP, *et al.* (1995) Dietary oligofructose lowers triglycerides, phospholipids and cholesterol in serum and very low density lipoproteins of rats. *Lipids* **30**, 163–167.
350. Rault-Nania MH, Gueux E, Demougeot C, *et al.* (2006) Inulin attenuates atherosclerosis in apolipoprotein E-deficient mice. *Br J Nutr* **96**, 840–844.
351. Fava F, Lovegrove JA, Gitau R, *et al.* (2006) The gut microbiota and lipid metabolism: implications for human health and coronary heart disease. *Curr Med Chem* **13**, 3005–3021.

British Journal of Nutrition

352. Trautwein EA, Forgbert K, Rieckhoff D, *et al.* (1999) Impact of beta-cyclodextrin and resistant starch on bile acid metabolism and fecal steroid excretion in regard to their hypolipidemic action in hamsters. *Biochim Biophys Acta Mol Cell Biol Lipids* **1437**, 1–12.
353. Adam A, Levrat-Verny MA, Lopez HW, *et al.* (2001) Whole wheat and triticale flours with differing viscosities stimulate cecal fermentations and lower plasma and hepatic lipids in rats. *J Nutr* **131**, 1770–1776.
354. van Meer H, Boehm G, Stellaard F, *et al.* (2008) Prebiotic oligosaccharides and the enterohepatic circulation of bile salts in rats. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* **294**, G540–G547.
355. Brighenti F (2007) Dietary fructans and serum triacylglycerols: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *J Nutr* **137**, 2552S–2556S.
356. Diraison F, Moulin P & Beylot M (2003) Contribution of hepatic de novo lipogenesis and reesterification of plasma non esterified fatty acids to plasma triglyceride synthesis during non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Diabet Metab* **29**, 478–485.
357. Daubioul CA, Horsmans Y, Lambert P, *et al.* (2005) Effects of oligofructose on glucose and lipid metabolism in patients with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis: results of a pilot study. *Eur J Clin Nutr* **59**, 723–726.
358. Cani PD & Delzenne NM (2009) Interplay between obesity and associated metabolic disorders: new insights into the gut microbiota. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* **9**, 737–743.
359. Cani PD, Amar J, Iglesias MA, *et al.* (2007) Metabolic endotoxemia initiates obesity and insulin resistance. *Diabetes* **56**, 1761–1772.
360. Turnbaugh PJ, Backhed F, Fulton L, *et al.* (2008) Diet-induced obesity is linked to marked but reversible alterations in the mouse distal gut microbiome. *Cell Host Microbe* **3**, 213–223.
361. Cani PD, Neyrinck AM, Fava F, *et al.* (2007) Selective increases of bifidobacteria in gut microflora improve high-fat-diet-induced diabetes in mice through a mechanism associated with endotoxaemia. *Diabetologia* **50**, 2374–2383.
362. Cani PD, Bibiloni R, Knauf C, *et al.* (2008) Changes in gut microbiota control metabolic endotoxemia-induced inflammation in high-fat diet-induced obesity and diabetes in mice. *Diabetes* **57**, 1470–1481.
363. Waldram A, Holmes E, Wang Y, *et al.* (2009) Top-down systems biology modeling of host metabotype-microbiome associations in obese rodents. *J Proteome Res* **8**, 2361–2375.
364. Wang Z, Xiao G, Yao Y, *et al.* (2006) The role of bifidobacteria in gut barrier function after thermal injury in rats. *J Trauma* **61**, 650–657.
365. Griffiths EA, Duffy LC, Schanbacher FL, *et al.* (2004) *In vivo* effects of bifidobacteria and lactoferrin on gut endotoxin concentration and mucosal immunity in Balb/c mice. *Dig Dis Sci* **49**, 579–589.
366. Wang ZT, Yao YM, Xiao GX, *et al.* (2004) Risk factors of development of gut-derived bacterial translocation in thermally injured rats. *World J Gastroenterol* **10**, 1619–1624.
367. Ruan X, Shi H, Xia G, *et al.* (2007) Encapsulated bifidobacteria reduced bacterial translocation in rats following hemorrhagic shock and resuscitation. *Nutrition* **23**, 754–761.
368. Keenan MJ, Zhou J, McCutcheon KL, *et al.* (2006) Effects of resistant starch, a non-digestible fermentable fiber, on reducing body fat. *Obesity (Silver Spring)* **14**, 1523–1534.
369. Zhou J, Martin RJ, Tulley RT, *et al.* (2008) Dietary resistant starch upregulates total GLP-1 and PYY in a sustained day-long manner through fermentation in rodents. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* **295**, E1160–E1166.
370. Juntunen KS, Niskanen LK, Liukkonen KH, *et al.* (2002) Postprandial glucose, insulin, and incretin responses to grain products in healthy subjects. *Am J Clin Nutr* **75**, 254–262.
371. Adam TC & Westerterp-Plantenga MS (2005) Nutrient-stimulated GLP-1 release in normal-weight men and women. *Horm Metab Res* **37**, 111–117.
372. Nilsson AC, Ostman EM, Holst JJ, *et al.* (2008) Including indigestible carbohydrates in the evening meal of healthy subjects improves glucose tolerance, lowers inflammatory markers, and increases satiety after a subsequent standardized breakfast. *J Nutr* **138**, 732–739.
373. Gao Z, Yin J, Zhang J, *et al.* (2009) Butyrate improves insulin sensitivity and increases energy expenditure in mice. *Diabetes* **58**, 1509–1517.
374. Kalliomaki M, Collado MC, Salminen S, *et al.* (2008) Early differences in fecal microbiota composition in children may predict overweight. *Am J Clin Nutr* **87**, 534–538.
375. Lundell AC, Adlerberth I, Lindberg E, *et al.* (2007) Increased levels of circulating soluble CD14 but not CD83 in infants are associated with early intestinal colonization with *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Clin Exp Allergy* **37**, 62–71.
376. Gronlund MM, Gueimonde M, Laitinen K, *et al.* (2007) Maternal breast-milk and intestinal bifidobacteria guide the compositional development of the *Bifidobacterium* microbiota in infants at risk of allergic disease. *Clin Exp Allergy* **37**, 1764–1772.
377. Salminen S, Bouley C, Boutron-Ruault MC, *et al.* (1998) Functional food science and gastrointestinal physiology and function. *Br J Nutr* **80**, Suppl. 1, S147–S171.
378. Salminen S, Gibson GR, McCartney AL, *et al.* (2004) Influence of mode of delivery on gut microbiota composition in seven year old children. *Gut* **53**, 1388–1389.
379. Salminen S & Isolauri E (2008) Opportunities for improving the health and nutrition of the human infant by probiotics. *Nestle Nutr Workshop Ser Pediatr Program* **62**, 223–233.
380. Salminen S, Collado MC, Isolauri E, *et al.* (2009) Microbial-host interactions: selecting the right probiotics and prebiotics for infants. *Nestle Nutr Workshop Ser Pediatr Program* **64**, 201–213.
381. Bellisle F, Diplock AT, Hornstra G, *et al.* (1998) Functional food science in Europe. *Br J Nutr* **80**, S1–193.
382. Walter J, Tannock GW, Tilsala-Timisjarvi A, *et al.* (2000) Detection and identification of gastrointestinal *Lactobacillus* species by using denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis and species-specific PCR primers. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **66**, 297–303.
383. Satokari RM, Vaughan EE, Akkermans AD, *et al.* (2001) Bifidobacterial diversity in human feces detected by genus-specific PCR and denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **67**, 504–513.
384. Heilig HG, Zoetendal EG, Vaughan EE, *et al.* (2002) Molecular diversity of *Lactobacillus* spp. and other lactic acid bacteria in the human intestine as determined by specific amplification of 16S ribosomal DNA. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **68**, 114–123.
385. Shen J, Zhang B, Wei G, *et al.* (2006) Molecular profiling of the *Clostridium leptum* subgroup in human fecal microflora by PCR-denaturing gradient gel electrophoresis and clone library analysis. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **72**, 5232–5238.
386. Vanhoutte T, de Preter V, De Brandt E, *et al.* (2006) Molecular monitoring of the fecal microbiota of healthy human subjects during administration of lactulose and *Saccharomyces boulardii*. *Appl Environ Microbiol* **72**, 5990–5997.
387. Kruse HP, Kleessen B & Blaut M (1999) Effects of inulin on faecal bifidobacteria in human subjects. *Br J Nutr* **82**, 375–382.
388. Bouhnik Y, Vahedi K, Achour L, *et al.* (1999) Short-chain fructo-oligosaccharide administration dose–dependently increases fecal bifidobacteria in healthy humans. *J Nutr* **129**, 113–116.

British Journal of Nutrition

389. Gibson GR, Beatty ER, Wang X, *et al.* (1995) Selective stimulation of bifidobacteria in the human colon by oligofructose and inulin. *Gastroenterology* **108**, 975–982.
390. Kleessen B, Sykura B, Zunft HJ, *et al.* (1997) The effects of inulin and lactose on fecal microflora, microbial activity, and bowel habit in elderly constipated persons. *Am J Clin Nutr* **65**, 1397–1402.
391. Tuohy KM, Kolida S, Lustenberger AM, *et al.* (2001) The prebiotic effects of biscuits containing partially hydrolysed guar gum and fructo-oligosaccharides – a human volunteer study. *Br J Nutr* **86**, 341–348.
392. Buddington RK, Williams CH, Chen SC, *et al.* (1996) Dietary supplement of neosugar alters the fecal flora and decreases activities of some reductive enzymes in human subjects. *Am J Clin Nutr* **63**, 709–716.
393. Menne E, Guggenbuhl N & Roberfroid M (2000) Fn-type chicory inulin hydrolysate has a prebiotic effect in humans. *J Nutr* **130**, 1197–1199.
394. Teuri U, Korpela R, Saxelin M, *et al.* (1998) Increased fecal frequency and gastrointestinal symptoms following ingestion of galacto-oligosaccharide-containing yogurt. *J Nutr Sci Vitaminol (Tokyo)* **44**, 465–471.
395. Moro G, Minoli I, Mosca M, *et al.* (2002) Dosage-related bifidogenic effects of galacto- and fructooligosaccharides in formula-fed term infants. *J Pediatr Gastroenterol Nutr* **34**, 291–295.
396. Bouhnik Y, Raskine L, Simoneau G, *et al.* (2004) The capacity of nondigestible carbohydrates to stimulate fecal bifidobacteria in healthy humans: a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled, parallel-group, dose-response relation study. *Am J Clin Nutr* **80**, 1658.
397. Bouhnik Y, Achour L, Paineau D, *et al.* (2007) Four-week short chain fructo-oligosaccharides ingestion leads to increasing fecal bifidobacteria and cholesterol excretion in healthy elderly volunteers. *Nutrition* **6**, 42–46.
398. Kleessen B, Schwarz S, Boehm A, *et al.* (2007) Jerusalem artichoke and chicory inulin in bakery products affect faecal microbiota of healthy volunteers 2. *Br J Nutr* **98**, 540–549.
399. Tuohy KM, Finlay RK, Wynne AG, *et al.* (2001) A human volunteer study on the prebiotic effects of HP-inulin – Faecal bacteria enumerated using fluorescent *in situ* hybridisation (FISH). *Anaerobe* **7**, 113–118.
400. Williams CH, Witherly SA & Buddington RK (1994) Influence of dietary neosugar on selected bacterial groups of the human fecal microbiota. *Microbial Ecol Health Dis* **7**, 91–97.
401. Depeint F, Tzortzis G, Vulevic J, *et al.* (2008) Prebiotic evaluation of a novel galactooligosaccharide mixture produced by the enzymatic activity of *Bifidobacterium bifidum* NCIMB 41171, in healthy humans: a randomized, double-blind, crossover, placebo-controlled intervention study. *Am J Clin Nutr* **87**, 785–791.
402. Bakker-Zierikzee AM, Alles MS, Knol J, *et al.* (2005) Effects of infant formula containing a mixture of galacto- and fructo-oligosaccharides or viable *Bifidobacterium animalis* on the intestinal microflora during the first 4 months of life. *Br J Nutr* **94**, 783–790.
403. Mattö J, Maunuksela L, Kajander K, *et al.* (2005) Composition and temporal stability of gastrointestinal microbiota in irritable bowel syndrome – a longitudinal study in IBS and control subjects. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* **43**, 213–222.
404. Walker AR (1987) Dietary fibre, minerals and vitamins. *Int J Obes* **11**, Suppl. 1, 45–56.
405. Roberfroid M (1997) *Dietary Fiber in Health and Disease*. New York: Plenum Press.
406. Coudray C & Fairweather-Tait SJ (1998) Do oligosaccharides affect the intestinal absorption of calcium in humans? *Am J Clin Nutr* **68**, 921–923.
407. Schaafsma G (1997) Bioavailability of calcium and magnesium. *Eur J Clin Nutr* **51**, Suppl. 1, S13–S16.
408. Fairweather-Tait SJ & Johnson IT (1999) Bioavailability of minerals. In *Colonic Microbiota, Nutrition and Health*, pp. 233–244 [GR Gibson and MB Roberfroid, editors]. Dordrecht: Kluwer Academic Publishers.
409. Carabin IG & Flamm WG (1999) Evaluation of safety of inulin and oligofructose as dietary fiber. *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* **30**, 268–282.
410. Franck A (2000) Prebiotics and calcium absorption. In *Functional Foods*, pp. 108–113 [F Angus and C Miller, editors]. Surrey: Leatherhead Publishing.
411. van Dokkum W & van den Heuvel E (2001) Non digestible oligosaccharides and mineral absorption. In *Handbook of Dietary Fiber*, pp. 259–267 [S Cho and ML Dreher, editors]. New York: CRC Press.
412. Roberfroid M (2002) Functional foods: concepts and application to inulin and oligofructose. *Br J Nutr* **87**, S139–S143.
413. Cashman KD (2002) Calcium intake, calcium bioavailability and bone health. *Br J Nutr* **87**, Suppl. 2, S169–S177.
414. Kaur N & Gupta AK (2002) Applications of inulin and oligofructose in health and nutrition. *J Biosci* **27**, 703–714.
415. Cashman KD (2002) Prebiotics and calcium bioavailability. In *Probiotics and Prebiotics: Where Are We going?*, pp. 149–171 [GW Tannock, editor]. Wymondham: Caister Academic Press.
416. Bongers A & van den Heuvel EGHM (2003) Prebiotics and the bioavailability of minerals and trace elements. *Food Rev Int* **19**, 397–422.
417. Cashman KD (2003) Prebiotics and calcium bioavailability. *Curr Issues Intest Microbiol* **4**, 21–32.
418. Caers W (2003) The role of prebiotic fibres in the process of calcium absorption. *Dietary Fibre Congress – Conference Proceedings* **46**.
419. Coudray C, Demigne C & Rayssiguier Y (2003) Effects of dietary fibers on magnesium absorption in animals and humans. *J Nutr* **133**, 1–4.
420. Coudray C (2004) Dietary fibers and mineral absorption: the case of magnesium. *Agro Food Industry Hi-Tech* **15**, 40–41, Special highlight: Prebiotics & Probiotics.
421. Weaver CM (2005) Inulin, oligofructose and bone health: experimental approaches and mechanisms. *Br J Nutr* **93**, Suppl. 1, S99–103.
422. Franck A (2006) Oligofructose-enriched inulin stimulates calcium absorption and bone mineralisation. *Nutr Bull* **31**, 341–345.
423. Bosscher D, Loo JV & Franck A (2006) Inulin and oligofructose as functional ingredients to improve bone mineralization. *Int Dairy J* 1092–1097.
424. Coxam V (2007) Current data with inulin-type fructans and calcium, targeting bone health in adults. *J Nutr* **137**, 2527S–2533S.
425. Scholz-Ahrens KE & Schrezenmeir J (2007) Inulin and oligofructose and mineral metabolism: the evidence from animal trials. *J Nutr* **137**, 2513S–2523S.
426. Scholz-Ahrens KE, Ade P, Marten B, *et al.* (2007) Prebiotics, probiotics, and synbiotics affect mineral absorption, bone mineral content, and bone structure. *J Nutr* **137**, 838S–846S.
427. Alexiou H & Franck A (2008) Prebiotic inulin-type fructans: nutritional benefits beyond dietary fibre source. *Beneo-Orafti Nutr Bull* **33**, 227–233.
428. Gibson GR & Delzenne NM (2008) Inulin and oligofructose. *Nutr Today* **43**, 54–59.
429. de Vrese M & Schrezenmeir J (2008) Probiotics, prebiotics, and synbiotics. *Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol* **111**, 1–66.
430. Griffin IJ & Abrams SA (2007) Effects of prebiotics on mineral absorption: mechanisms of action. In *Handbook of*

British Journal of Nutrition

Prebiotics, pp. 93–103 [GR Gibson and M Roberfroid, editors]. London: CRC Press.
431. Hawthorne KM & Abrams SA (2007) Prebiotics and the absorption of minerals:a review of experimental and human data. In *Handbook of Prebiotics*, pp. 105–113 [GR Gibson and M Roberfroid, editors]. London: CRC Press.
432. Kelly G (2009) Inulin-type prebiotics: a review (Part 2). *Altern Med Rev* **14**, 36–55.
433. de Vrese M (2009) Health benefits of probiotics and prebiotics in women. *Menopause Int* **15**, 35–40.
434. Chonan O, Matsumoto K & Watanuki M (1995) Effect of galactooligosaccharides on calcium absorption and preventing bone loss in ovariectomized rats. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* **59**, 236–239.
435. Takahara S, Morohashi T, Sano T, *et al.* (2000) Fructooligosaccharide consumption enhances femoral bone volume and mineral concentrations in rats. *J Nutr* **130**, 1792–1795.
436. Richardson JE, Verghese M, Walker LT, *et al.* (2002) Effects of prebiotics on bone mineralisation in Fisher 344 male weabing rats. *IFT USA*.
437. Zafar TA, Weaver CM, Zhao Y, *et al.* (2004) Nondigestible oligosaccharides increase calcium absorption and suppress bone resorption in ovariectomized rats. *J Nutr* **134**, 399–402.
438. Mitamura R & Hara H (2005) Prolonged feeding of difructose anhydride III increases strength and mineral concentrations of the femur in ovariectomized rats. *Br J Nutr* **94**, 268–274.
439. Mitamura R & Hara H (2006) Ingestion of difructose anhydride III partially restores calcium absorption impaired by vitamin D and estrogen deficiency in rats. *Eur J Nutr* **45**, 242–249.
440. Nzeusseu A, Dienst D, Haufroid V, *et al.* (2006) Inulin and fructo-oligosaccharides differ in their ability to enhance the density of cancellous and cortical bone in the axial and peripheral skeleton of growing rats. *Bone* **38**, 394–399.
441. Lobo AR, Colli C & Filisetti TMCC (2006) Fructooligosaccharides improve bone mass and biomechanical properties in rats. *Nutr Res* **26**, 413–420.
442. Jamieson JA, Ryz NR, Taylor CG, *et al.* (2008) Dietary long-chain inulin reduces abdominal fat but has no effect on bone density in growing female rats. *Br J Nutr* **100**, 451–459.
443. Demigne C, Jacobs H, Moundras C, *et al.* (2008) Comparison of native or reformulated chicory fructans, or non-purified chicory, on rat cecal fermentation and mineral metabolism. *Eur J Nutr* **47**, 366–374.
444. Lobo AR, Filho JM, Alvares EP, *et al.* (2009) Effects of dietary lipid composition and inulin-type fructans on mineral bioavailability in growing rats. *Nutrition* **25**, 216–225.
445. Rondon LJ, Rayssiguier Y & Mazur A (2008) Dietary inulin in mice stimulates Mg^{2+} absorption and modulates TRPM6 and TRPM7 expression in large intestine and kidney. *Magnes Res* **21**, 224–231.
446. Chonan O & Watanuki M (1995) Effect of galactooligosaccharides on calcium absorption in rats. *J Nutr Sci Vitaminol (Tokyo)* **41**, 95–104.
447. Yanahira S, Morita M, Aoe S, *et al.* (1997) Effects of lactitol-oligosaccharides on calcium and magnesium absorption in rats. *J Nutr Sci Vitaminol (Tokyo)* **43**, 123–132.
448. Morohashi T, Sano T, Ohta A, *et al.* (1998) True calcium absorption in the intestine is enhanced by fructooligosaccharide feeding in rats. *J Nutr* **128**, 1815–1818.
449. Younes H, Coudray C, Bellanger J, *et al.* (2001) Effects of two fermentable carbohydrates (inulin and resistant starch) and their combination on calcium and magnesium balance in rats. *Br J Nutr* **86**, 479–485.
450. Mitamura R, Hara H, Aoyama Y, *et al.* (2002) Supplemental feeding of difructose anhydride III restores calcium absorption impaired by ovariectomy in rats. *J Nutr* **132**, 3387–3393.
451. Asvarujanon P, Ishizuka S & Hara H (2005) Promotive effects of non-digestible disaccharides on rat mineral absorption depend on the type of saccharide. *Nutrition* **21**, 1025–1035.
452. Coudray C, Feillet-Coudray C, Tressol JC, *et al.* (2005) Stimulatory effect of inulin on intestinal absorption of calcium and magnesium in rats is modulated by dietary calcium intakes short- and long-term balance studies. *Eur J Nutr* **44**, 293–302.
453. Coudray C, Rambeau M, Feillet-Coudray C, *et al.* (2005) Dietary inulin intake and age can significantly affect intestinal absorption of calcium and magnesium in rats: a stable isotope approach. *Nutr J* **4**, 29.
454. Shiga K, Nishimukai M, Tomita F, *et al.* (2006) Ingestion of difructose anhydride III, a non-digestible disaccharide, prevents gastrectomy-induced iron malabsorption and anemia in rats. *Nutrition* **22**, 786–793.
455. Coudray C, Feillet-Coudray C, Gueux E, *et al.* (2006) Dietary inulin intake and age can affect intestinal absorption of zinc and copper in rats. *J Nutr* **136**, 117–122.
456. Azorin-Ortuno M, Urban C, Ceron JJ, *et al.* (2009) Effect of low inulin doses with different polymerisation degree on lipid metabolism, mineral absorption, and intestinal microbiota in rats with fat-supplemented diet. *Food Chem* **113**, 1058–1065.
457. Klobukowski J, Modzelewska-Kapitula M & Kornacki K (2009) Calcium bioavailability from diets based on white cheese containing probiotics or synbiotics in short-time study in rats. *Pakistan J Nutr* **8**, 933–936.
458. Wang Y, Zeng T, Wang SE, *et al.* (2010) Fructo-oligosaccharides enhance the mineral absorption and counteract the adverse effects of phytic acid in mice. *Nutrition* **26**, 305–311.
459. Mathey J, Lamothe V, Benneteau-Pelissero C, *et al.* (2008) Improvement of bone-sparing effect of soy isoflavones by pre-and probiotics in postmenopausal women. *Clinl Med Women's Health* **1**, 15–23.
460. Sakaguchi E, Sakoda C & Toramaru Y (1998) Caecal fermentation and energy accumulation in the rat fed on indigestible oligosaccharides. *Br J Nutr* **80**, 469–476.
461. Juskiewicz J, Jankowski J, Zdunczyk Z, *et al.* (2006) Performance and gastrointestinal tract metabolism of turkeys fed diets with different contents of fructooligosaccharides. *Poult Sci* **85**, 886.
462. Zdunczyk Z, Juskiewicz J & Estrella I (2006) Cecal parameters of rats fed diets containing grapefruit polyphenols and inulin as single supplements or in a combination. *Nutrition* **22**, 898.
463. Sugatani J, Wada T, Osabe M, *et al.* (2006) Dietary inulin alleviates hepatic steatosis and xenobiotics-induced liver injury in rats fed a high-fat and high-sucrose diet: association with the suppression of hepatic cytochrome P450 and hepatocyte nuclear factor 4alpha expression. *Drug Metab Dispos* **34**, 1677–1687.

NS British Journal of Nutrition

British Journal of Nutrition

Volume 104, 2010 ISSN: 0007-1145

Publishing, Production, Marketing, and Subscription Sales Office:
Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building
Shaftesbury Road
Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

For Customers in North America:
Cambridge University Press
Journals Fullfillment Department
100 Brook Hill Drive
West Nyack
New York 10994-2133
USA

Publisher: Katy Christomanou

Special sales and supplements:
This Journal accepts relevant advertisements and inserts. We also provide bulk reprints of suitable papers to meet teaching or promotional requirements. The journal also publishes supplements on behalf of academic and corporate collaborators. Please contact Katy Christomanou at the Cambridge address for further details. E-mail: kchristomanou@cambridge.org

Subscription information:
British Journal of Nutrition is an international journal published by Cambridge University Press on behalf of The Nutrition Society. The twelve issues starting January 2010 comprise Volume 103, the twelve issues starting July 2010 comprise Volume 104.

Annual subscription rates:
Volumes 103/104 (24 issues):
Internet/print package £954/$1860/€1528
Internet only: £803/$1566/€1283
Print only: £909/$1772/€1477

Any **supplements** to this journal published in the course of the annual volume are normally supplied to subscribers at no extra charge.

Back volumes are available. Please contact Cambridge University Press for further information.

Claims for non-receipt of journal issues will be considered on their merit and only if the claim is received within six months of publication. Replacement copies supplied after this date will be chargeable.

US POSTMASTERS: please send address corrections to *British Journal of Nutrition,* Cambridge University Press, 100 Brook Hill Drive, West Nyack, New York 10994-2133.

Directions to Contributors are available from the Society at the address below or can be found on the Society's website at http://www.nutritionsociety.org (an abbreviated Notes for Authors can be found inside the back cover).

Offprints: The author (or main author) of an accepted paper will receive a copy of the PDF file and a voucher copy of the issue in which their paper has been published. There will be an option to purchase paper offprints, these should be ordered at proof stage. No page charges are levied by this journal.

This journal is printed on acid-free paper from renewable sources. Printed in the UK by Bell & Bain Ltd., Glasgow.

This journal issue has been printed on FSC-certified paper and cover board. FSC is an independent, non-governmental, not-for-profit organization established to promote the responsible management of the world's forests. Please see www.fsc.org for information.

British Journal of Nutrition is covered in Current Contents®/Agriculture, Biology & Environmental Sciences, SciSearch®, Research Alert®, Current Contents®/Life Sciences, Index Medicus® (MEDLINE®), AGRICOLA®, CAB Abstracts™, Global Health, BIOSIS® Database, EMBASE/Excerpta Medica and Elsevier BIOBASE/Current Awareness in Biological Sciences, CINAHL, and Chemical Abstracts Service.

British Journal of Nutrition

Directions to Contributors - Concise Version

(Revised August 2007)

The *British Journal of Nutrition* is an international peer-reviewed journal that publishes original papers, review articles, technical notes and short communications in English in all branches of nutritional science. **Prospective authors should note that they (or their institutions) now retain the copyright of their material published in the *British Journal of Nutrition***. As a contributor you are asked to follow the guidelines set out below. For detailed information on the presentation of the technical content of your paper please see the full version of the **Directions to Contributors**, which can be downloaded from the Nutrition Society website (http://www.nutritionsociety.org). Prospective authors may also contact the Publications Office directly on + 44 (0)20 7605 6555 (telephone), +44 20 7602 1756 (fax), or edoffice@nutsoc.org.uk (email).

Papers should be accompanied by a statement to the effect that the conditions laid down in the full Directions to Contributors are accepted. The statement should affirm that the submission represents original work that has not been published previously and which is not currently being considered by another journal. It should also confirm that each author has seen and approved the contents of the submitted paper. At the time of acceptance the authors should provide a completed copy of the 'Licence to Publish' (in lieu of copyright transfer). The Licence to Publish is available on the Nutrition Society website (http://www.nutrition society.org)**. All relevant financial interests should be declared.**

Text. Papers should be submitted with 1.5 line spacing and margins of at least 2 cm on each side. Text should be printed without underlining, bold or italics (except for scientific names). Standard abbreviations (e.g. Fig. and Figs.) and SI units should be used. **Typescripts can be submitted as Word, WordPerfect, EPS, Text, Postscript or RTF files. A Word processing format is required for production purposes once papers have been accepted. When substantial revisions are required to typescripts, authors are given the opportunity to do this once only, the need for any further changes should at most reflect any minor issues.**

Title Page. The first page should include a concise, informative title together with the names and addresses of the authors. A contact name for correspondence should be given and telephone, fax and email addresses provided. Authors should supply three or four key words or phrases (each containing up to three words). A short title of up to 45 characters is required as a running head.

Abstract. Each paper should commence with an accurate and informative abstract, written as a single paragraph. It should be complete in itself and intelligible without reference to the text or figures, and should not exceed 250 words.

Tables. Tables should be reduced to the simplest form, and should not duplicate information in the text or figures. They should be typed on separate pages, one page for each Table, at the end of the article and carry headings describing their content.

Illustrations. The original illustrations should accompany the submitted typescript. Text figures, line drawings, computer-gen erated figures and graphs should be of sufficient size and quality to allow for reduction by half or two-thirds. Half-tone photographs are acceptable where they clearly contribute to the text. All figures should be numbered and legends should be provided.

Note that authors will be charged 350 GBP for the publication of colour figures. Authors from countries entitled to free journal access through HINARI will be exempt from these charges.

References. References should be based on the numbered (Vancouver) system. **When an article has more than ten authors, only the names of the first three should be given followed by *et al.*; give abbreviated journal titles** and conform to the following styles:

Goel V, Cheema SK, Agellon LB, Ooraikul B & Basu TK (1999) Dietary rhubabrb (***Rheum rhaponticum***) stalk fibre stimulates cholesterol 7α-hydroxylase gene expression and bile acid excretion in cholesterol-fed C57BL/6J mice. ***Br J Nutr*** **81**, 65–71.

Jenkins DJ, Kendall CW, Marchie A, ***et al***. (2003) The effect of combining plant sterols, soy protein, viscous fibres, and almonds in treating hypercholesterolemia. ***Metabolism*** **52**, 1478–1483.

Brandtzaeg P (2003) Role of local immunity and breast-feeding in mucosal homoeostasis and defence against infections. In ***Nutrition and Immune Function***, pp. 273–320 [PC Calder, CJ Field and HS Gill, editors]. Wallingford, Oxon: CAB International.

Stock M & Rothwell NJ (1982) ***Obesity and Leanness: Basic Aspects***. London: John Libbey.

Citations should be numbered consecutively in the order in which they first appear in the text using superscript Arabic numerals in parentheses, e.g. 'The conceptual difficulty of this approach has recently been highlighted[1,2–4]. If a reference is cited more than once the same number should be used each time.

Referees. Authors are asked to submit the names of up to four scientists who would be well-qualified to review the paper; however, no more than one such reviewer will be used. The email addresses and institutions of the named reviewers should be given.

Proofs. PDF page proofs will be emailed to authors for checking, and should be returned within 3 days (by fax or Express mail) to the BJN Production Editor, Cambridge University Press, The Edinburgh Building, Shaftesbury Road, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK; fax +44 1223 325802, email bjnproduction@cambridge.org

Typescripts. The *British Journal of Nutrition* operates an on-line submission and reviewing system (eJournalPress). Authors should submit to the following address: http://bjn.msubmit.net/ If any difficulties are encountered please contact the Publications Office (details above) immediately.

Professor Philip Calder
Editor-in-Chief
British Journal of Nutrition
The Nutrition Society
10 Cambridge Court
210 Shepherds Bush Road
London W6 7NJ
UK

Tel: +44 (0)20 7605 6555
Fax: +44 20 7602 1756
Email: edoffice@nutsoc.org.uk

Volume 104 Supplement 2 August 2010

British Journal of Nutrition

Contents